

**IBM System/3  
Models 4 and 6  
Operation Control Language and  
Disk Utility Programs  
Reference Manual**

**Program Number 5703-SC1**

**GC21-7516-5  
File No. S3-36**

#### **Fifth Edition (June 1978)**

This is a major revision of, and obsoletes, GC21-7516-4 and Technical Newsletters GN21-5328 and GN21-5521. Changes are indicated by a vertical line at the left of the change.

This edition applies to version 15, modification 0 of the System Control Programming for the IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 and to all subsequent versions and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions or technical newsletters. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; before using this publication in connection with the operation of IBM systems, refer to the latest *IBM System/3 Bibliography*, GC20-8080, for the editions that are applicable and current.

Use this publication only for the purposes stated in the *Preface*.

Publications are not stocked at the address below. Requests for copies of IBM publications and for technical information about the system should be made to your IBM representative or to the branch office serving your locality.

This publication could contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Address your comments to IBM Corporation, Publications, Department 245, Rochester, Minnesota 55901. Comments become the property of IBM.

This publication is intended for use by programmers who are doing either of the following:

1. Writing Operation Control Language (OCL) statements needed to run programs in the system.
2. Writing utility control statements necessary to run disk utility programs supplied by the system.

*Notes:*

1. In this publication there are some references in support of 24K and 32K bytes of main storage. A System/3 Model 6 with these main storage sizes is available only as an RPQ. Your IBM Marketing Representative can provide information about this.
2. All references, in this manual, to *DATA96* apply to the System/3 Model 6 only.

**Prerequisite Publications**

*IBM System/3 Model 4 Introduction, GC21-5146*

*IBM System/3 Model 6 Introduction, GA21-9122*

*IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 System Programmer's Guide, GC21-7530*

**Other Publications Referenced in this Manual**

*IBM System/3 Model 6 Operator's Guide, GC21-7501*

*IBM System/3 Disk Sort Reference Manual, SC21-7522*

*IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 Conversational Utility Programs Reference Manual, SC21-7528*

*IBM System/3 Model 6 Utility Program for IBM 1255 Magnetic Character Reader Reference Manual, SC21-7527*

*IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 RPG II Reference Manual, SC21-7517*

**SYSTEM CONFIGURATION**

For information concerning the minimum system configuration for the IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 and additional devices supported, see one of the following publications as appropriate for your System/3 model:

- *IBM System/3 Models 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12 System Generation Reference Manual, GC21-5126*
- *IBM System/3 Model 4 Introduction, GC21-5146*
- *IBM System/3 Model 6 Introduction, GA21-9122*



<b>PART I. OPERATION CONTROL LANGUAGE . . . . .</b>	<b>1</b>		
<b>INTRODUCTION TO OCL . . . . .</b>	<b>2</b>		
How to Use Part I . . . . .	2		
Operator's OCL Guide . . . . .	3		
<b>CONVERSATIONAL OCL . . . . .</b>	<b>4</b>		
The Job Cycle . . . . .	4		
The LOAD Cycle . . . . .	6		
The BUILD Cycle . . . . .	6		
The BUILDC Cycle . . . . .	7		
The CALL Cycle . . . . .	7		
System-Operator Interaction During Keyword Prompting . . . . .	7		
Keyboard . . . . .	8		
End-of-Statement Keys . . . . .	9		
Statement Numbers in an OCL Cycle . . . . .	9		
Comments . . . . .	10		
Keyword Sequence for OCL Load Cycle . . . . .	10		
Keyword-Response Summary (Load Cycle) . . . . .	11		
Keyword Sequence for OCL Build Cycle . . . . .	16		
Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) . . . . .	17		
Keyword Sequence for OCL BUILDC Cycle . . . . .	25		
Keyword-Response Summary (BUILDC Cycle) . . . . .	25		
Keyword Sequence for OCL Call Cycle . . . . .	27		
Keyword-Response Summary (Call Cycle) . . . . .	27		
<b>CARD OCL FOR MODEL 6 . . . . .</b>	<b>29</b>		
Assigning Data Recorder or 3741 as System Input Device . . . . .	29		
IBM 129 Programming Considerations . . . . .	29		
Returning Control to Keyboard . . . . .	29		
Control Statements in Procedures . . . . .	30		
Card Format of OCL Statements . . . . .	30		
OCL Statements . . . . .	30		
General Coding Rules . . . . .	31		
Statement Order . . . . .	32		
Coding Multi-Volume File Parameters . . . . .	32		
<b>KEYWORD DESCRIPTIONS . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>		
<b>BUILD NAME . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>		
Duplicate Procedure Names . . . . .	33		
Deleting a Source Library Procedure . . . . .	33		
<b>BUILDC NAME . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>		
<b>CALL NAME . . . . .</b>	<b>33</b>		
<b>COMPILE Keywords . . . . .</b>	<b>34</b>		
Compile Object Keyword . . . . .	34		
Source Keyword . . . . .	34		
Unit Keyword . . . . .	34		
<b>DATE . . . . .</b>	<b>34</b>		
Overriding the System Date . . . . .	35		
Format of the DATE Statement . . . . .	35		
<b>EJECT . . . . .</b>	<b>35</b>		
<b>FILE Keywords . . . . .</b>	<b>35</b>		
System-Operator Interaction During Prompting of			
File Keywords . . . . .	35		
Unit Keyword . . . . .	36		
Pack Keyword . . . . .	36		
Label Keyword . . . . .	36		
Records and Tracks Keyword . . . . .	37		
Location Keyword . . . . .	37		
Retain Keyword . . . . .	37		
Date Keyword . . . . .	38		
<b>HALT . . . . .</b>	<b>38</b>		
<b>LOAD NAME . . . . .</b>	<b>39</b>		
For Customer Programs . . . . .	39		
For System Programs . . . . .	39		
<b>MODIFY Keyword . . . . .</b>	<b>40</b>		
System-Operator Interaction During Modification . . . . .	40		
Changing a Previous OCL Statement . . . . .	42		
Deleting a Previous OCL Statement . . . . .	42		
Entering Comments . . . . .	43		
Cancelling Job . . . . .	43		
Changing Forms Length . . . . .	44		
Changing Punch Device . . . . .	45		
Including Control Statements . . . . .	46		
<b>NOEJECT . . . . .</b>	<b>47</b>		
<b>NOHALT . . . . .</b>	<b>47</b>		
<b>READY . . . . .</b>	<b>47</b>		
<b>RUN . . . . .</b>	<b>48</b>		
<b>SWITCH . . . . .</b>	<b>48</b>		
Indicator Settings . . . . .	48		
IPL Considerations . . . . .	48		
Duration of SWITCH Settings . . . . .	48		
Operator-System Interaction for SWITCH			
Statement (LOAD Cycle) . . . . .	49		
Operator-System Interaction for SWITCH			
Statement (BUILD Cycle) . . . . .	50		
Operator-System Interaction for SWITCH			
Statement (CALL Cycle) . . . . .	50		
<b>USING OCL . . . . .</b>	<b>51</b>		
Multi-Volume Files . . . . .	51		
Creation . . . . .	51		
Processing . . . . .	51		
OCL Considerations . . . . .	51		
List Requirements . . . . .	52		
File Statement Summary . . . . .	54		
Coding Multi-Volume File Statements . . . . .	55		
Changing Multi-Volume File Statements with			
MODIFY Keyword . . . . .	55		
Including Sort Source or Utility Control Statements			
in a Procedure . . . . .	55		
Increasing File Size of the RPG Procedure . . . . .	55		
Maximum Number of Files in SWA . . . . .	55		
Processing Large Indexed Disk Files . . . . .	56		
Entering RPG II Source Statements From the			
Keyboard at Compile Time . . . . .	56		
Inquiry Interrupt . . . . .	57		
Restrictions During Inquiry . . . . .	57		
Chained Procedures . . . . .	57		
OCL for the IBM 2222 Printer . . . . .	58		
Using the FORMS Statement . . . . .	58		
Log Device . . . . .	58		
MODIFY — Entering the Keyword FORMS . . . . .	58		

OCL for the IBM 2265-2 Display . . . . .	59
READY — Entering LOG . . . . .	59
MODIFY — Entering LOG . . . . .	59
OCL Error Messages . . . . .	60
Co-Resident Systems . . . . .	62
<b>SAMPLE JOBS . . . . .</b>	<b>63</b>
Sample Job 1. Initialize Disk . . . . .	64
Sample Job 2. Compile an RPG Source Program . . . . .	65
Sample Job 3. Process Customer Program "INVUPD" . . . . .	66
Sample Job 4. Copy File Disk to Disk . . . . .	67
Sample Job 5. Multi-File Build . . . . .	69
Sample Job 6. Multi-File Call . . . . .	71
Sample Job 7. Update Multi-Volume Master File . . . . .	72
Sample Job 8. Create a Multi-Volume Indexed File . . . . .	73
Sample Job 9. Maintain a Multi-Volume Indexed File With Packed Keys . . . . .	75
Sample Job 10. Include Utility Control Statements in a Procedure . . . . .	76
Sample Job 11. Chain Procedures . . . . .	77
<b>PART II. DISK UTILITY PROGRAMS . . . . .</b>	<b>79</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION TO DISK UTILITY PROGRAMS . . . . .</b>	<b>80</b>
General Program Operation . . . . .	80
All Programs Except Library Maintenance . . . . .	80
Library Maintenance Program . . . . .	81
Using Disk Utilities . . . . .	81
Control Statements . . . . .	81
Writing OCL Statements . . . . .	82
Utility Control Statements . . . . .	82
OCL Statements . . . . .	82
<b>DISK INITIALIZATION PROGRAM (\$INIT) . . . . .</b>	<b>83</b>
Functions . . . . .	83
Naming a Disk . . . . .	83
Writing Track and Sector Addresses . . . . .	83
Checking for Defective Tracks (Surface Analysis) . . . . .	83
Assigning Alternate Tracks . . . . .	83
Options . . . . .	84
Type of Initialization . . . . .	84
Number of Disks . . . . .	85
Erasing Alternate Track Assignments . . . . .	85
Additional Disk Identification . . . . .	85
Surface Analysis Option . . . . .	85
Control Statements . . . . .	85
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	86
Parameter Summary . . . . .	87
Parameter Descriptions . . . . .	88
TYPE Parameter (UIN) . . . . .	88
UNIT Parameter (UIN) . . . . .	88
VERIFY Parameter (UIN) . . . . .	88
ERASE Parameter (UIN) . . . . .	88
CAP Parameter . . . . .	88
PACK Parameter (VOL) . . . . .	89
ID (Identification) Parameter (VOL) . . . . .	89
OLDPACK Parameter (VOL) . . . . .	89

OCL Considerations . . . . .	90
LOAD Sequence . . . . .	90
BUILD Sequence . . . . .	90
Example . . . . .	91
Primary Initialization of Two Disks . . . . .	91
Messages for Disk Initialization . . . . .	92
<b>ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT PROGRAM (\$ALT) . . . . .</b>	<b>93</b>
Functions . . . . .	93
Writing Track Addresses . . . . .	93
Checking for Defective Tracks . . . . .	93
Printing Sectors Containing Incorrect Data . . . . .	93
Assigning an Alternate Track . . . . .	93
Options . . . . .	94
Type of Assignment . . . . .	94
Number of Alternate Tracks . . . . .	95
Surface Analysis . . . . .	95
Control Statements . . . . .	95
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	95
Parameter Summary: ALT (Alternate) Statement . . . . .	95
Parameter Descriptions . . . . .	96
PACK Parameter . . . . .	96
UNIT Parameter . . . . .	96
VERIFY Parameter . . . . .	96
ASSIGN Parameter . . . . .	96
UNASSIGN Parameter . . . . .	96
OCL Considerations . . . . .	97
LOAD Sequence . . . . .	97
BUILD Sequence . . . . .	97
Example . . . . .	98
Conditional Assignment . . . . .	98
Messages for Alternate Track Assignment . . . . .	99
<b>ALTERNATE TRACK REBUILD PROGRAM (\$BUILD) . . . . .</b>	<b>100</b>
Functions . . . . .	100
Locating Incorrect Data . . . . .	100
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	100
Replacing Incorrect Data . . . . .	100
Options . . . . .	100
Parameter and Substitute Data Summary . . . . .	100
Number of Characters . . . . .	101
Number of Tracks . . . . .	101
Parameter and Substitute Data Descriptions . . . . .	101
PACK Parameter . . . . .	101
UNIT Parameter . . . . .	101
TRACK Parameter . . . . .	101
LENGTH Parameter . . . . .	101
DISP (Displacement) Parameter . . . . .	101
Substitute Data . . . . .	101
OCL Considerations . . . . .	102
LOAD Sequence . . . . .	102
BUILD Sequence . . . . .	102
Example . . . . .	103
Correcting Characters on an Alternate Track . . . . .	103
<b>FILE AND VOLUME LABEL DISPLAY PROGRAM (\$LABEL) . . . . .</b>	<b>105</b>
Functions . . . . .	105
Print VTOC Information . . . . .	105
Print Headings . . . . .	105
Options . . . . .	105

Entire Contents of VTOC . . . . .	105	Parameter Descriptions . . . . .	129
File Information Only . . . . .	105	FROM and TO Parameters (COPYPACK Statement) . . . . .	129
Number of File Names . . . . .	105	OUTPUT Parameter (COPYFILE Statement) . . . . .	129
Control Statements . . . . .	105	INPUT Parameter (COPYFILE Statement) . . . . .	129
Control Statements Summary . . . . .	106	LENGTH Parameter (COPYFILE Statement) . . . . .	129
Parameter Summary (Display Statement) . . . . .	106	DELETE Parameter (COPYFILE Statement) . . . . .	130
Parameter Descriptions . . . . .	106	REORG (Reorganize) Parameter (COPYFILE Statement) . . . . .	130
UNIT Parameter . . . . .	106	WORK Parameter (COPYFILE Statement) . . . . .	130
LABEL Parameter . . . . .	107	SELECT KEY and PKY Parameters (SELECT Statement) . . . . .	131
OCL Considerations . . . . .	110	SELECT RECORD Parameters (SELECT Statement) . . . . .	131
LOAD Sequence . . . . .	110	FILE Parameter (SELECT Statement) . . . . .	131
BUILD Sequence . . . . .	110	LENGTH and LOCATION Parameters (KEY Statement) . . . . .	132
Example . . . . .	111	Card and Diskette Considerations (\$COPY) . . . . .	132
Printing VTOC Information for Two Files . . . . .	111	Card or Diskette Input . . . . .	132
		Card or Diskette Output . . . . .	132
<b>FILE DELETE PROGRAM (\$DELETE)</b> . . . . .	<b>112</b>	OCL Considerations . . . . .	133
Functions . . . . .	112	LOAD Sequence for Copying an Entire Disk . . . . .	133
VTOC File Reference . . . . .	112	BUILD Sequence for Copying an Entire Disk . . . . .	133
Erase File Information . . . . .	112	LOAD Sequence for Copying or Printing Files . . . . .	134
Options . . . . .	112	BUILD Sequence for Copying or Printing Files . . . . .	135
Deleting a File . . . . .	112	Examples . . . . .	136
Number of Files . . . . .	112	Copying an Entire Disk . . . . .	136
Number of File Names . . . . .	113	Copying a File from One Disk to Another . . . . .	137
Control Statements . . . . .	113	Printing Part of a File . . . . .	139
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	113	Copy a Disk File to a Card File . . . . .	140
Parameter Summary . . . . .	114	Copy a Disk File to the 3741 (Diskette) . . . . .	141
Parameter Descriptions . . . . .	114	Copy a Disk File to the 3741 (Diskette) and Print a Part of the File . . . . .	142
Pack Parameter . . . . .	114	Copy a Card File to a Diskette and Print the Entire File . . . . .	143
Unit Parameter . . . . .	114	Copy and Print a Portion of a File on a Diskette to a Card Device . . . . .	144
Label Parameter . . . . .	114	Copy a Diskette File to a Disk File and Print only the Copied Records . . . . .	145
Date Parameter . . . . .	115	Create an Indexed File from a Sequential Card File . . . . .	147
Data Parameter (REMOVE Statement Only) . . . . .	115	Create an Indexed Disk File from Sequential Disk Input . . . . .	149
OCL Considerations . . . . .	116		
LOAD Sequence . . . . .	116		
BUILD Sequence . . . . .	116		
Example . . . . .	117		
Deleting One of Several Files Having the Same Name . . . . .	117		
Removing One File . . . . .	118		
<b>COPY/DUMP PROGRAM (\$COPY)</b> . . . . .	<b>119</b>		
Functions . . . . .	119		
Disk or File Location . . . . .	119		
Using a Work Area . . . . .	119		
Identifying the Device . . . . .	119		
Copying a Portion of a File . . . . .	119		
Printing a Portion of a File . . . . .	119		
Record Keys and Relative Record Numbers . . . . .	119		
Options . . . . .	120		
Copying and Printing . . . . .	120		
Deleting Records . . . . .	121		
Reorganizing a File . . . . .	121		
Copying Multivolume Files . . . . .	122		
Maintaining Correct Date and Volume Sequence Numbers . . . . .	122		
Maintaining Correct Relative Record Numbers . . . . .	122		
Direct File Attributes . . . . .	122		
Copying Multivolume Index Files . . . . .	122		
Control Statements . . . . .	123		
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	124		
Parameter Summary . . . . .	127		

<b>LIBRARY MAINTENANCE PROGRAM (\$MAINT)</b> . . . . .	151	Copy Examples . . . . .	186
Library Description . . . . .	151	Copying Minimum System from one Disk to Another . . . . .	186
Organization of this Section . . . . .	152	Printing Library Directories . . . . .	187
<b>Allocate</b> . . . . .	152	Replacing a Library Entry: Replacement Coming from Another Disk . . . . .	188
Creating Libraries . . . . .	152	Copying a Disk File to a Library . . . . .	189
Allocate Considerations and Restrictions . . . . .	153	Copying a Procedure from the System Input Device . . . . .	190
Control Statement Restrictions . . . . .	153	<b>Delete Examples</b> . . . . .	191
Allocate Control Statement Summary . . . . .	154	Deleting a Temporary Entry from a Library . . . . .	191
Allocate Parameter Summary . . . . .	155	Deleting All Temporary Entries with Names that Begin with Certain Characters . . . . .	192
<b>Parameter Descriptions</b> . . . . .	156	Deleting All Permanent Library Entries of One Type . . . . .	193
TO Parameter . . . . .	156	<b>Modify Examples</b> . . . . .	194
SOURCE and OBJECT Parameters . . . . .	156	Replacing Statements in a Procedure . . . . .	194
DIRSIZE Parameter . . . . .	156	Removing Source Statements from a Module . . . . .	195
SYSTEM Parameter . . . . .	156	Inserting a Statement in a Source Module . . . . .	196
WORK Parameter . . . . .	157	<b>Rename Example</b> . . . . .	197
Using the Allocate Function . . . . .	158	Renaming a Set of Source Statements in a Source Library . . . . .	197
Compress in Place (OBJECT-[R NUMBER]) . . . . .	160		
<b>Copy</b> . . . . .	161	<b>APPENDIX A: IBM SYSTEM/3 STANDARD CHARACTER SET</b> . . . . .	198
COPY Control Statement Summary: Reader-to-Library . . . . .	162		
COPY Control Statement Summary: File-to-Library . . . . .	162	<b>APPENDIX B: RECORDS — TRACKS CONVERSION</b> . . . . .	199
COPY Control Statement Summary: Library-to- Library . . . . .	163	For Sequential or Direct Files . . . . .	199
COPY Control Statement Summary: Library-to-Printer and/or Card . . . . .	164	For Indexed Files . . . . .	199
Copy Parameters . . . . .	165	<b>APPENDIX C: DISK ORGANIZATION</b> . . . . .	200
Using the Copy Function . . . . .	167	Volume Table of Contents (VTOC) . . . . .	200
Sample System Directory Printout . . . . .	171	Source Library . . . . .	200
Using the System Directory to Determine if the Object Library should be Reorganized . . . . .	172	Object Library . . . . .	200
Source Library Directory . . . . .	173	Files . . . . .	200
Object Library Directory . . . . .	174	<b>APPENDIX D: INQUIRY PROGRAM</b> . . . . .	201
<b>Delete</b> . . . . .	176	Requesting Inquiry in an Interrupt Environment . . . . .	201
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	176	Classifying Programs for Inquiry . . . . .	202
Delete Parameters . . . . .	177	Inquiry in an Interrupt Environment . . . . .	203
<b>Modify</b> . . . . .	178	Planning Inquiry Programs . . . . .	204
Uses . . . . .	178	<b>APPENDIX E: LIBRARY ENTRY RETRIEVAL</b>	
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	179	SUBROUTINE (SUBR 15) . . . . .	205
Modify Parameter . . . . .	180	Using SUBR15 with RPG II . . . . .	206
Remove, Replace, Insert Parameters . . . . .	181	Error Identification . . . . .	207
<b>Rename</b> . . . . .	181	Example . . . . .	207
Control Statement Summary . . . . .	181	<b>GLOSSARY</b> . . . . .	209
Rename Parameters . . . . .	181		
<b>OCL Considerations</b> . . . . .	182	<b>INDEX</b> . . . . .	210
LOAD Sequence . . . . .	182		
BUILD Sequence . . . . .	182		
<b>Allocate Examples</b> . . . . .	183		
Creating Both Source and Object Libraries on a Disk . . . . .	183		
Changing the Size of a Source Library . . . . .	184		
Deleting the Object Library from a Disk . . . . .	185		



This publication contains two parts. Part I describes Operation Control Language (OCL) statements. Part II describes disk utility programs.

### Part I

Refer to Part I if you want to know:

1. What an OCL statement is.
2. How to enter the OCL statements required to run your jobs.

### Part II

Refer to Part II if you want to know:

1. What disk utility programs are supplied with the system.
2. The function of each disk utility program.
3. The Operation Control Language (OCL) statements and utility control statements necessary to request each disk utility program.



**PART I  
OPERATION CONTROL LANGUAGE**

## Introduction to OCL

Before the IBM System/3 Model 6 can run a program, it must know what you want it to do and where to find the information it will need to do the job. You supply the what and where information in a series of *OCL (operation control language)* statements. The system can't run any of your programs unless each one is accompanied by a series of OCL statements. A series of OCL statements is called an *OCL cycle*. There are four OCL cycles: LOAD, BUILD, BUILD, and CALL.

Part I of this manual is designed to help you select an OCL cycle and fill out the OCL guide sheets your operator will use in response to the OCL prompting for each job. You can either design an operator's OCL guide sheet for your installation or use the pre-printed form that is available (see *Operator's OCL Guide*).

### HOW TO USE PART I

The Conversational OCL section of this manual contains information on responding to OCL prompting. There are three levels of information for the four OCL cycles.

Here is how to use each level:


- Use the **KEYWORD SEQUENCES** for an overall understanding of the OCL cycle. The sequences show the order of the OCL keywords for a cycle and indicate which keywords require responses.
- Use the **KEYWORD-RESPONSE SUMMARIES** for a quick recall of all possible entries for each OCL statement. In the responses column of the summary charts:
  - Words or letters in all capital letters (FORMS, BUILD, R1) represent actual entries.
  - Words or letters not in all capital letters (mmddy, Disk Name) represent information you must supply.
- Use the **KEYWORD DESCRIPTIONS** when you need a detailed explanation of a particular keyword.

The section titled *Using OCL* contains information on programming OCL for complex jobs and special features or devices.

# OPERATOR'S OCL GUIDE

The operator's OCL guide is available for you to use to tell your operator how to respond to the OCL prompting for a job. The CALL cycle is not included on the guide because the OCL prompting for that cycle is so short.

For information on filling out the OCL guide, see *IBM System/3 Model 6 System Programmer's Guide*, GC21-7530.



International Business Machines Corporation  
System/3 Model 6

GX21-9126:  
Printed in U.S.A.

Job \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Programmer \_\_\_\_\_

## OPERATION CONTROL LANGUAGE (OCL) GUIDE

Keywords	Responses	Considerations
000 REA D Y	B U I L D	Procedure Name
001 B U I L D	N A M E	F1, R1, F2 or R2
010 L O A D	N A M E	Columns 75-80 of RPG Control Card or System Program Name
011 L O A D	U N I T	F1, R1, F2 or R2
020 D A T E		mmddy or ddmmyy
030 S W I T C H		1-On, 0-Off, X-No Change
040 F I L E	N A M E	Columns 7-14 of RPG File Description Specifications or Predefined Filename
041 F I L E	U N I T	F1, R1, F2 or R2
042 F I L E	P A C K	Disk Name (Assigned by Disk Initialization Program)
043 F I L E	L A B E L	VTOC File Name (if different than response to FILE NAME)
044 F I L E	R E C O R D S	1-999999 (Maximum Number of Records in File)
045 F I L E	T R A C K S	1-398 (Maximum Number of Tracks for this File)
046 F I L E	L O C A T I O N	8-405 Location of First Track of File
047 F I L E	R E T A I N	S-Scratch, T-Temporary, P-Permanent
048 F I L E	D A T E	mmddy or ddmmyy
050 F I L E	N A M E	Columns 7-14 of RPG File Description Specifications or Predefined File Name
051 F I L E	U N I T	F1, R1, F2 or R2
052 F I L E	P A C K	Disk Name (Assigned by Disk Initialization Program)
053 F I L E	L A B E L	VTOC File Name (if different than response to FILE NAME)
054 F I L E	R E C O R D S	1-999999 (Maximum Number of Records in File)
055 F I L E	T R A C K S	1-398 (Maximum Number of Tracks for this File)
056 F I L E	L O C A T I O N	8-405 Location of First Track of File
057 F I L E	R E T A I N	S-Scratch, T-Temporary, P-Permanent
058 F I L E	D A T E	mmddy or ddmmyy
M O D I F Y		<p><b>MODIFY OPTIONS</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter RUN</li> <li>2. Enter CANCEL</li> <li>3. Correct Statement                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter Statement number</li> <li>Retype or delete (.) response</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Create new Statement                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>INCLUDE, LOG, FORMS, *(For Comments)</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

## Conversational OCL

Every job run on the Model 6 requires a set of Operation Control Language (OCL) statements to give the system information about the job to be run (such as what program to use, what files to use, what job date to use, etc.). An OCL statement consists of a keyword and a response.

The OCL for the Model 6 is called *conversational OCL* because a question and answer procedure is used. The system prints the question called a *keyword*, and the operator supplies the answer called a *response*. The keyword tells the operator the type of information required by the system. For example, the keyword FILE NAME indicates that the name of one file used in the program must be supplied. By printing a keyword, the system is *prompting* the operator for a response.

The operator responds to each keyword that applies to the job by typing in the relevant information. (When the system prompts FILE NAME, for example, the operator types the name of one file that the job uses.) If the system prompts a keyword that doesn't apply to the job, the operator bypasses the response.

### THE JOB CYCLE

The system will prompt READY when it is ready to run jobs. (For information on preparing the system to run jobs, see the *IBM System/3 Model 6 Operator's Guide*, GC21-7501.) The response to READY tells the system what type of OCL cycle you want to run.

There are four OCL cycles: LOAD, BUILD, BUILDC, and CALL. Of the four cycles, only the LOAD cycle is independent; that is, you can run a job by responding just to the keywords in that cycle. The other three cycles are inter-related; to run a job you must use two or more of them.

The OCL cycle you choose to use should be based on frequency of program use and whether the program will be run alone or with a group of programs.

For infrequent jobs use:

**LOAD** This provides the OCL statements needed to run the job.

For frequent jobs use one of these:

**BUILD** This puts the OCL statements for a job into a source library procedure.

**BUILDC** This chains the procedures.

**CALL** This calls a procedure from the source library.

*Note:* A set of OCL statements in a source library is called a procedure.

System Prompts READY

YOU WANT TO DO THIS

Continue from job to job without halting

Halt after each job

Stop page eject at end of job

Eject page at end of job (cancel NOEJECT statement)

Change input device

Change log device

Change punch device

Execute job

Build a procedure

Operator types NOHALT

Operator types HALT

Operator types NOEJECT

Operator types EJECT

Operator types READER  
(See index entry card OCL)

Operator types LOG  
(See index entry LOG)

Operator types PUNCH  
(See index entry PUNCH)

Operator types LOAD and supplies OCL statements

Operator types BUILD and supplies OCL

OR

Operator types CALL and system reads OCL statements from procedure

OR

Operator types BUILDC and supplies OCL

OPERATOR DOES THIS

SYSTEM DOES THIS

Continues from job to job without halting

Halts after each job

System does not eject a page at end of job

System ejects a page at end of job

Changes Input Device

Changes Log Device

Changes Punch Device

System loads and executes program

System puts statements in procedure

System Prompts READY

## The LOAD Cycle

When you use a LOAD cycle, you're telling the system:

1. Here are the OCL statements for my program.
2. Go to the disk drive I specify and find the program I want to run.
3. Load the program into the processing unit.
4. Run my program.

The LOAD cycle OCL statements are not saved. If you want to run the same job again, your operator must respond to all the keywords in the LOAD cycle again. It's best to use the LOAD cycle for jobs you run infrequently because this cycle has many keywords and takes quite a while for responses.

## The BUILD Cycle

When you use a BUILD cycle, you're telling the system:

1. Here are the LOAD cycle OCL statements for job xxxx.
2. Store the LOAD cycle statements on disk so that they can be used whenever I want to run the program.
3. Do not run the program now.

Once the set of OCL statements is written on a disk, the set of statements is referred to as a *procedure*. The process of writing the statements on the disk is referred to as *building a procedure*. You use the BUILD cycle to build a procedure.

Although the BUILD cycle is the longest of all the OCL cycles in terms of operator time required, it doesn't run a job. Its function is to save the OCL statements for a job by writing them on one of the disks. The advantage of the BUILD cycle is that once the OCL statements are stored on the disk, the program can be run using them rather than by keying all the required statements.

### *Delayed Responses in the BUILD Cycle*

Responding to a keyword by typing a question mark is referred to as a *delayed response*. Delayed responses are valid only in the BUILD cycle and only after keywords that contain a delayed response in the keyword-response chart (see *Keyword-Response Summary – Build Cycle*). A delayed response to any of these BUILD keywords will do the following:

- Cause the system to reprompt the keyword during the CALL cycle.
- Force the operator to respond to the keyword when it is reprompted during the CALL cycle. (The system won't continue the CALL prompting cycle until the operator types a valid response.)

### *Control Statements in Procedures*

HALT, NOHALT, LOG, READER, PUNCH, and PAUSE, are ignored when read from procedures during the CALL cycle and are not put into a procedure during a BUILD cycle.



## The BUILDDC Cycle

When you use a BUILDDC cycle, you're telling the system:

1. I want to prepare a procedure to run a series of jobs which are always executed one after the other with no interruption.
2. The OCL statements for each job in the group are in procedures stored on disk.
3. Here are the names and disk drive locations of the procedures for each job in the group.
4. Build a chained procedure, establishing a sequence in which the individual procedures are run.

A *chained procedure* is a list of the procedures for each job in a group, in the order you want to run them. The list contains:

1. The name of the procedure for each job.
2. The disk drive on which the procedure is located.

The process of writing the list on a disk is referred to as *building a chained procedure*. BUILDDC stands for build chained.

## The CALL Cycle

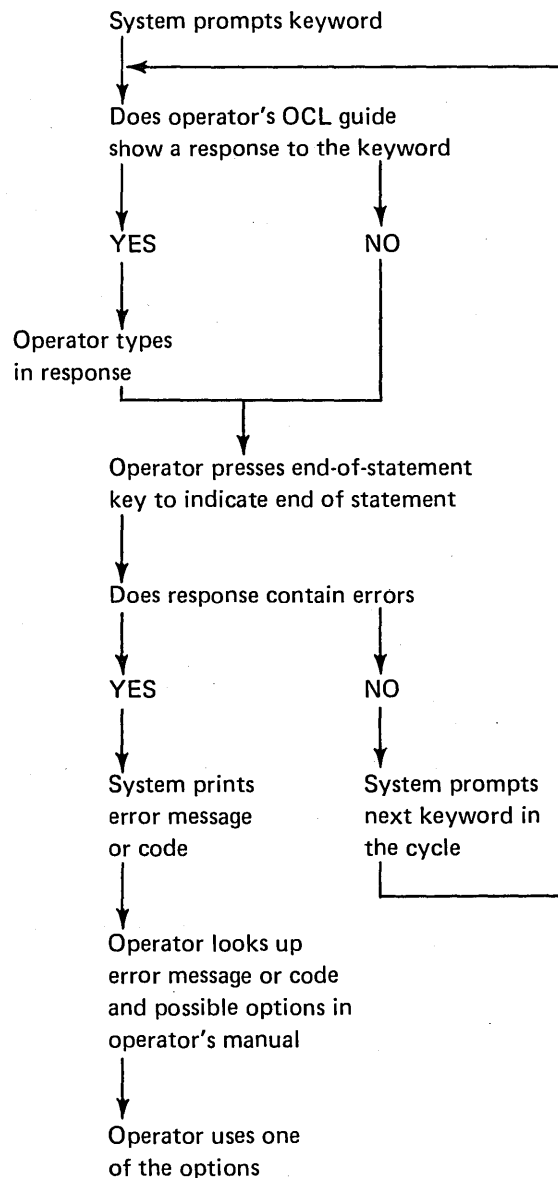
CALL is the shortest OCL cycle, having only four keywords. When you use a CALL cycle, you're telling the system:

1. Locate, on disk, the procedure I built for job xxxx.
2. Use it to run job xxxx.

The CALL cycle is always linked to a BUILD or a BUILDDC cycle.

## SYSTEM-OPERATOR INTERACTION DURING KEYWORD PROMPTING

The system analyzes the operator's response to each keyword. If the response contains a formatting error (such as invalid characters or duplicate procedure names), the system prints an error message and reprompts the keyword. If the operator does not know the correct response, entering /\* as a response to any prompt will cancel the job and cause READY to be prompted.



# Keyboard

## Command Key Lights

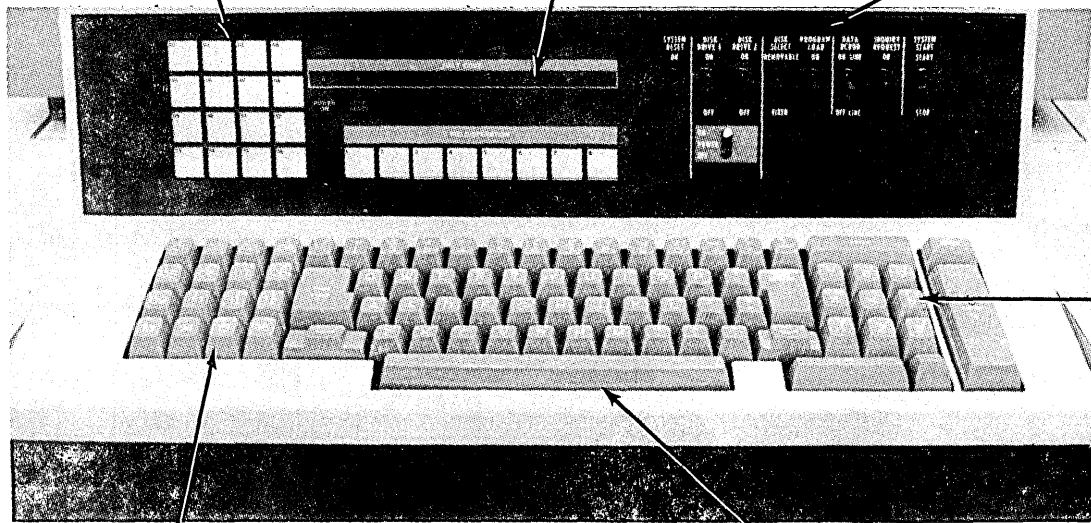
These lights tell the operator which command keys have been turned on.

## System Status Lights

I/O attention lights indicate those devices that need operator attention. The halt code and field/operation lights show system status.

## System Control Switches

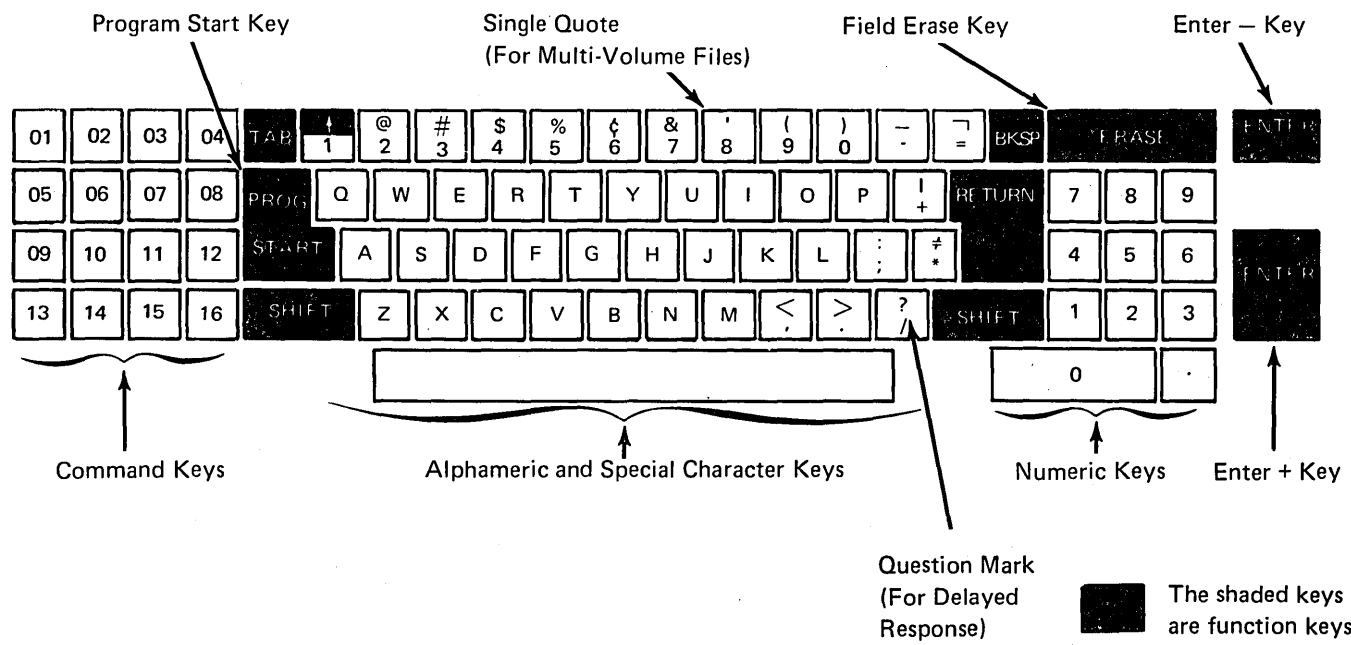
These switches start and control the system.



10-Key  
Numeric  
Keyboard

Command Keys

Alphameric Keyboard



## End-Of-Statement Keys

The operator must respond to each keyword that the system prompts. The operator responds to a keyword by typing the required information (if the keyword applies to the job) and by pressing an end-of-statement key. The end-of-statement key can be either PROG START or ENTER — The Keyword-Response Summary charts in Appendix A explain the effect of end-of-statement keys on the prompting sequence.

### *Program Start (PROG START) or Enter Plus (ENTER+)*

Pressing the PROG START or ENTER+ key tells the system that the response is complete and to prompt the next keyword.

### *Enter Minus (ENTER-)*

Pressing the ENTER— key to end a response causes different processing depending on what keyword was prompted and what type of OCL cycle is being run.

*Pressing ENTER— after LOAD NAME or UNIT in a LOAD Cycle:* If the ENTER— key is used as an end-of-response to the LOAD NAME or UNIT prompts in a LOAD cycle, the remaining keywords in the cycle will be bypassed and MODIFY prompted.

*Pressing ENTER— after LOAD NAME or UNIT in a BUILD Cycle:* If the ENTER— key is used as an end-of-response to the LOAD NAME or UNIT prompts in a BUILD cycle, the system will prompt COMPILE OBJECT, SOURCE, or UNIT.

*Pressing ENTER— after FILE NAME:* If the ENTER— key is used as an end-of-response to the FILE NAME prompt, the system prompts KEY LENGTH and HIKEY for multi-volume indexed files (see *Multi-Volume Files* in Appendix A).

*Pressing ENTER— after CALL NAME or UNIT in a CALL Cycle:* If the ENTER— key is used as an end-of-response to the CALL NAME or UNIT prompts in a CALL cycle, the OCL and any included control statements in the called procedure are not displayed. However, OCL statements with delayed responses are displayed and the system waits for a response. MODIFY is not prompted after either the OCL statements or the included control statements.

*Pressing ENTER— in the File Keywords:* If the operator responds to FILE NAME, he must also respond to the next two file keywords: UNIT and PACK. He can, however, bypass any or all of the rest of the file keywords. To bypass a single keyword he presses the PROG START key as a response. To bypass all of the remaining file keywords he presses the ENTER— key either as an end-of-response or as a response. Pressing the ENTER— key causes the system to prompt FILE NAME for the next file.

## Statement Numbers in an OCL Cycle

Statement numbers are assigned by the system to statements in an OCL cycle. These statement numbers are used by the operator when using MODIFY to reference previous OCL statements.

Each OCL statement, except READY and MODIFY, is assigned a three digit number. The first number in a BUILD or CALL cycle is 000, and in a LOAD cycle 010.

The statement number is incremented by 10 for each major keyword (DATE, SWITCH, COMPILE OBJECT, FILE NAME, etc.), and by one for each minor keyword (UNIT, PACK, LABEL, RECORDS, etc.).

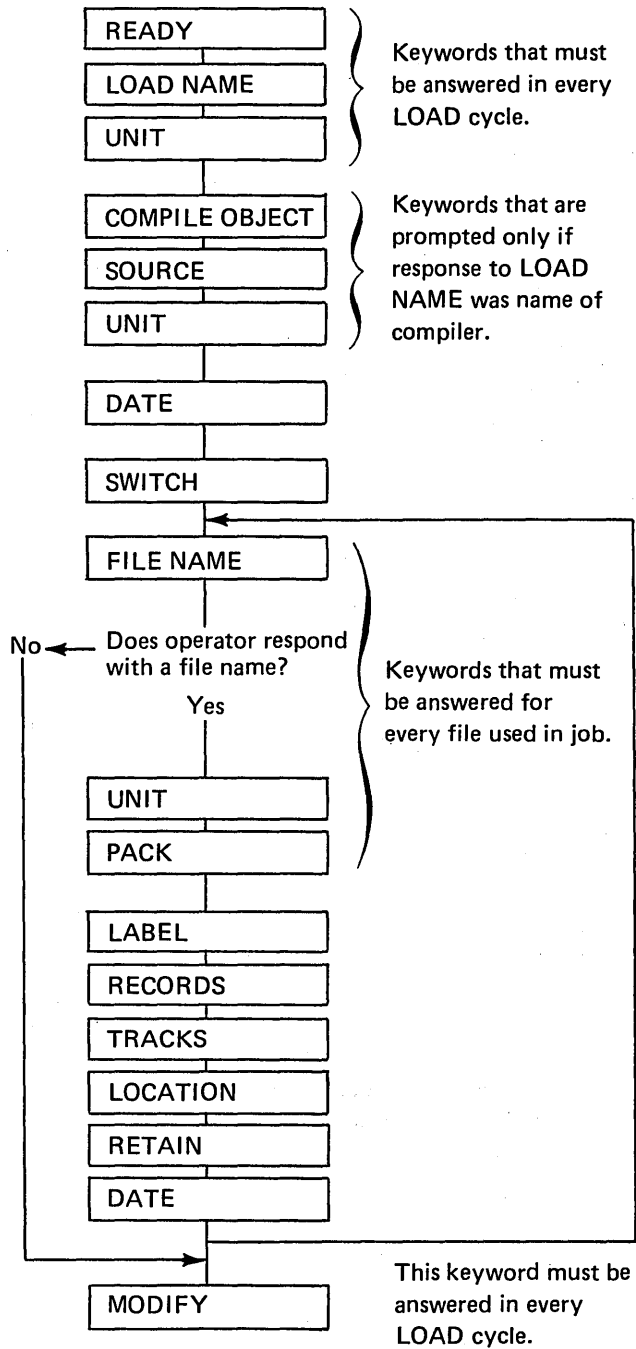
When the INCLUDE keyword is used to add utility control statements or sort source statements to a procedure, these included statements are assigned two-digit statement numbers. These statement numbers start with 00 and are incremented by one for each included statement.

The sample OCL jobs show the statement numbers assigned under various OCL cycles.

## Comments

Comments can be entered after any response on the same line if at least one space is left between the response and the comment (see *Modify: Entering Comments* under *MODIFY* in Part I to add comments during *MODIFY* time).

## Keyword Sequence for OCL Load Cycle



**Keyword-Response Summary (Load Cycle)**

Keyword	Response	Consideration
READY	LOAD	None
	Press PROG START	System prompts LOAD NAME
LOAD NAME	Program Name (Not Compiler) OR Press PROG START OR Press ENTER— OR Compiler Program Name Press PROG START	Name of program to be run System prompts DATE after UNIT System prompts MODIFY after UNIT Name of compiler to be run (\$RPG for RPG II Compiler) System prompts COMPILE OBJECT after UNIT
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2 Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	Location of the disk whose object library contains the program to be run. System prompts next keyword (see LOAD NAME in this chart) System prompts MODIFY if not compiler
COMPILE OBJECT	R1, R2, F1, or F2 OR Press PROG START OR No Response Press PROG START	Your system has more than one object library and you don't want to put the compiled program in the object library which contains the compiler. System prompts SOURCE System will put the compiled program in the object library which contains the compiler. Prompt SOURCE
SOURCE	Name of Source Program Press PROG START	Name assigned to RPG II source program when the KSE or Library Maintenance Program put it in a source library System prompts UNIT

For information about the KSE Program see the *IBM System/3 Model 6 Conversational Utility Programs Reference Manual, SC21-7528*.  
 For information about the Library Maintenance Program see Part II of this manual.

Keyword-Response Summary (Load Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Consideration
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of the disk whose source library contains the RPG II source program
	Press PROG START	System prompts DATE
DATE	<p>mmddy or ddmmyy</p> <p><b>OR</b></p> <p>Press PROG START</p> <p>No Response</p>	<p>Required when job date is not the same as the system date. (Responses must follow format established during system generation.)</p> <p>System prompts SWITCH</p>
	Press PROG START	<p>Either no date is required for the job</p> <p><b>OR</b></p> <p>you're going to use the system date. System prompts SWITCH.</p>
SWITCH (XXXXXXXX)	<p>8-position setting (combination of 1's, 0's, and X's)</p> <p><b>OR</b></p> <p>Press PROG START</p> <p>No Response</p>	<p>Required to change external indicators in programs. Three choices for each position:</p> <p>1 = turn indicator on 0 = turn indicator off X = leave indicator as is</p>
	Press PROG START	System prompts FILE NAME
	Press PROG START	Job does not use external indicators or you want to use the current setting. System prompts FILE NAME
FILE NAME	<p>File name of file used by program</p> <p>Press PROG START</p> <p><b>OR</b></p> <p>Press ENTER—</p> <p>No Response</p>	<p>Columns 7-14 of RPG File Description Specifications, or predefined file name for system programs</p>
	Press PROG START	System prompts UNIT
	Press PROG START	System prompts KEY LENGTH (see <i>Multi-Volume Files</i> in Appendix A)
	Press PROG START	<p>Either your job uses no files at all</p> <p><b>OR</b></p> <p>you have already described all the files the job uses. You want the system to prompt MODIFY</p>

**Keyword-Response Summary (Load Cycle) (Continued)**

Keyword	Response	Consideration
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	During a file creation run — location of disk where you want to write the file. During other runs — location of disk which contains the file to be processed.
	Press PROG START	System prompts PACK.
PACK	Disk Name	During a file creation run — the name which identifies the disk on which you want to write the file. During other runs — name which identifies the disk on which the file is located.
	Press PROG START <b>OR</b>	System prompts LABEL.
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
LABEL	VTOC Filename	Required when VTOC Filename is different than response to FILE NAME.
	<b>OR</b>	
	Press PROG START <b>OR</b>	System prompts RECORDS
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want the system to prompt RECORDS
RECORDS <sup>1</sup>	1-999999	Number of records in the file.
	<b>OR</b>	
	Press PROG START <b>OR</b>	System prompts LOCATION.
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt TRACKS.

**1** At file creation time, *either* the number of records *or* the number of tracks must be specified.

Keyword-Response Summary (Load Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
TRACKS <sup>1</sup>	1-398	Number of tracks the file will occupy.
	OR	
	Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts LOCATION.  System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt LOCATION.
LOCATION	8-405	Use during file creation runs if you want to specify a beginning track location for the file.
	OR	
	Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts RETAIN.  System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt RETAIN.
RETAIN	P, T, S, or A	P — permanent T — temporary S — scratch A — activate scratch
	OR	
	Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts DATE.  System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	If file is being created, file designation will be T. System prompts DATE.

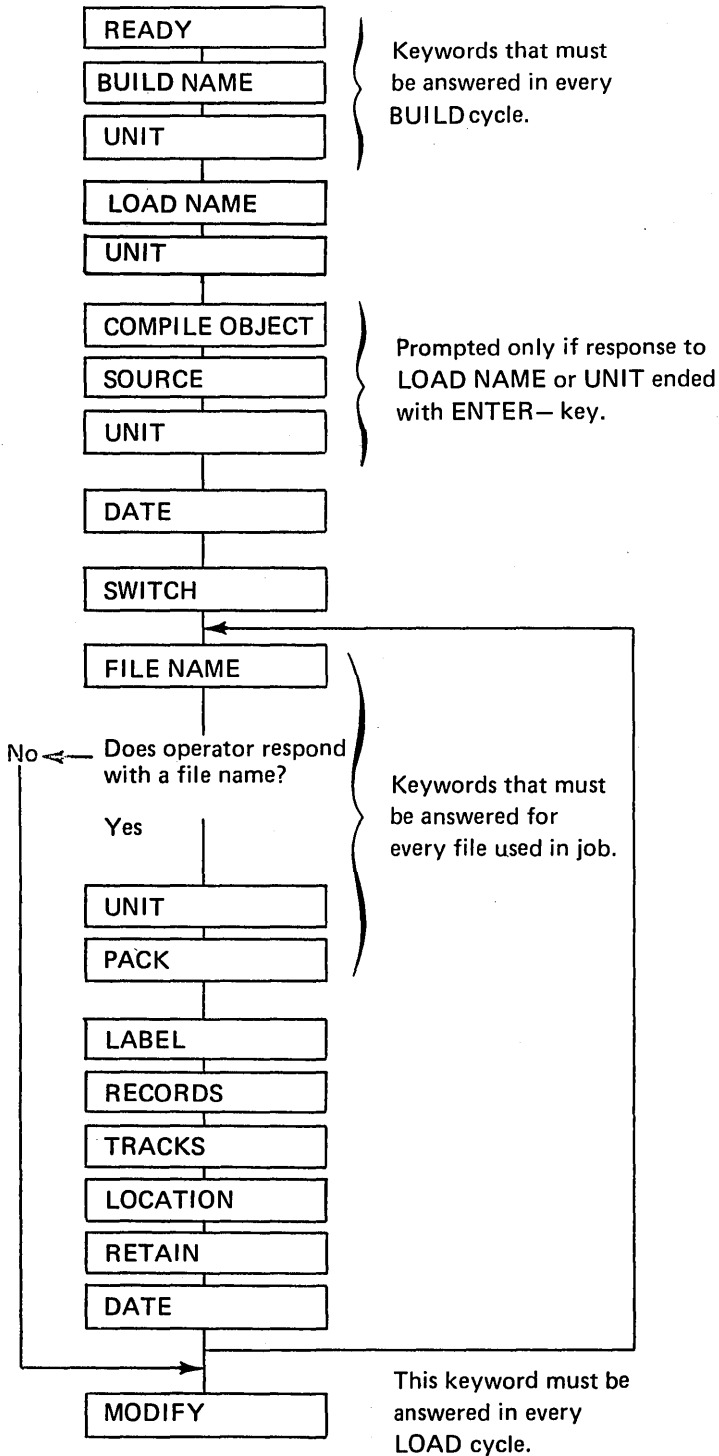
<sup>1</sup> At file creation time, *either* the number of records *or* the number of tracks must be specified. If operator entered number of RECORDS, TRACKS will not be prompted.



Keyword-Response Summary (Load Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
DATE	mmddy or ddmmy	Required when job uses a file whose name and label are the same as those of another file on the same disk. (Response must follow format established during sysgen.)
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	No Response Press PROG START	You don't have to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt FILE NAME, for next file.
MODIFY (Operator can use one, all, or a combination of the responses.)	LOG	Used only if CRT display or 2222 printer on system.
	Press PROG START	System prompts LOG DEVICE.
	CANCEL	Cancel job.
	Press PROG START	System prompts READY or displays end-of-job halt.
	FORMS	Change lines per page printed output for system programs.
	Press PROG START	System prompts FORMS DEVICE.
	PUNCH	Change the system punch device.
	Press PROG START	System prompts PUNCH.
	Asterisk (*) Followed by comments	Enter comment.
	Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response.
Statement number and comma	To delete statement	
Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response.	
Statement number	To correct statement (LOAD NAME cannot be changed).	
Press PROG START	System waits for correct statement.	
RUN	Tells system — a. The LOAD cycle is complete. b. Run the job.	
Press PROG START	System runs job	

**Keyword Sequence for OCL Build Cycle**



**Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle)**

Keyword	Response	Considerations
READY	BUILD  Press PROG START	None  System prompts BUILD NAME
BUILD NAME	Procedure Name  Press PROG START	Maximum of six alphameric characters. Must begin with alphabetic characters. Must not be DIR, SYSTEM, or ALL  System prompts UNIT.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2  Press PROG START	Location of the disk where you want to put procedure. (Procedure is placed in the source library of the disk operator specifies.)  System prompts LOAD NAME
LOAD NAME	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">OR</div> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;">                     Program Name  Press PROG START  Compiler Name  Press ENTER—                 </div> </div>	Name of program to be run.  System prompts DATE after UNIT.  Name of compiler to be run (\$RPG for RPG II compiler).  System prompts UNIT then COMPILE OBJECT, SOURCE, UNIT
UNIT	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">OR</div> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;">                     R1, R2, F1, or F2  Press PROG START <b>OR</b> Press ENTER—  ? (Delayed Response)  Press PROG START <b>OR</b> Press ENTER—                 </div> </div>	Location of disk whose object library contains program  System prompts DATE  System prompts COMPILE OBJECT  Forces operator to respond to unit during CALL cycle.  System prompts DATE.  System prompts COMPILE OBJECT

Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
COMPILE OBJECT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Your system has more than one object library and you don't want to put the compiled program in the object library which contains the compiler.
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts SOURCE.
	OR No Response	
	OR Press PROG START	System will put the compiled program in the object library which contains the compiler. System prompts SOURCE.
SOURCE	OR ? (Delayed Response)	You will tell the system where to put the compiled program during the CALL cycle.
	Press PROG START	System prompts SOURCE.
	OR Name of Source Program	Name assigned to source program when the KSE or Library Maintenance Program put it in a source library.
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts UNIT.
UNIT	OR ? (Delayed Response)	You will supply the name of the source program during the CALL cycle.
	Press PROG START	System prompts UNIT.
	OR R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of the disk whose source library contains the RPG source program
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts DATE.
UNIT	OR ? (Delayed Response)	You will supply the location of the source program during the CALL cycle.
	Press PROG START	System prompts DATE.

Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
DATE	mmddyy or ddmmyy	To put a job date in the procedure. (Response must follow format established during sysgen.)
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts SWITCH.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to supply DATE during CALL cycle.
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts SWITCH.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	If no date is necessary for job or system date is acceptable. DATE will not be part of procedure.
SWITCH	8-position setting (combination of 1's, 0's, and X's)	Required to change external indicators in programs. Three choices for each position: 1 = turn indicator on 0 = turn indicator off X = leave indicator as is
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts FILE NAME.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to SWITCH during CALL cycle
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts FILE NAME
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	Job does not require external indicators. SWITCH will not be part of procedure.
FILE NAME	File name of file used by program	Columns 7-14 of RPG File Description Specifications, or predefined filename for system programs.
	OR Press PROG START	System prompts UNIT.
	OR Press ENTER—	System prompts KEY LENGTH (see <i>Multi-Volume Files</i> in Appendix A).
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to FILE NAME during CALL cycle.
OR Press PROG START	System prompts UNIT	
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	Either your job uses no files at all <b>OR</b> you have already described all the files the job uses. You want the system to prompt MODIFY

Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	During a file creation run – location of disk where you want to write the file. During other runs – location of disk which contains the file to be processed.
	OR	
	Press PROG START	System prompts PACK.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to UNIT during CALL cycle.
	Press PROG START	System prompts PACK.
PACK	Disk Name	During a file creation run – the name which identifies the disk on which you want to write the file. During other runs – name which identifies the disk on which the file is located.
	OR	
	Press PROG START	System prompts LABEL.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to PACK during CALL cycle.
	Press PROG START	System prompts LABEL.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME.
LABEL	VTOC Filename	Required when VTOC Filename is different than response to FILE NAME.
	OR	
	Press PROG START	System prompts RECORDS.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
		? (Delayed Response)
	Press PROG START	System prompts RECORDS.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want the system to prompt RECORDS.

**Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)**

Keyword	Response	Considerations
RECORDS <sup>1</sup>	1-999999	Number of records in the file.
	OR Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts LOCATION. System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to RECORDS during CALL cycle.
	OR Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts LOCATION. System prompts FILE NAME.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt TRACKS.
TRACKS <sup>1</sup>	1-398	Number of tracks the file will occupy.
	OR Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts LOCATION. System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to TRACKS during CALL cycle.
	OR Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts LOCATION. System prompts FILE NAME.
	No Response	
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want to prompt LOCATION.

<sup>1</sup> When a file is created, either the number of records or the number of tracks must be specified. If operator entered number of RECORDS, TRACKS will not be prompted.

**Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)**

Keyword	Response	Considerations
LOCATION	8-405	Use during file creation runs if you want to specify a beginning track location for the file.
	OR	
	Press PROG START	System prompts RETAIN.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to LOCATION during CALL cycle.
OR		
	Press PROG START	System prompts RETAIN.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME.
No Response		
	Press PROG START	You don't want to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt RETAIN.
RETAIN	P, T, S, or A	P — permanent T — temporary S — scratch A — activate scratch
	OR	
	Press PROG START	System prompts DATE.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to RETAIN during CALL cycle.
OR		
	Press PROG START	System prompts DATE.
	OR	
	Press ENTER—	System prompts FILE NAME.
No Response		
	Press PROG START	If file is being created, file designation will be T. System prompts DATE.



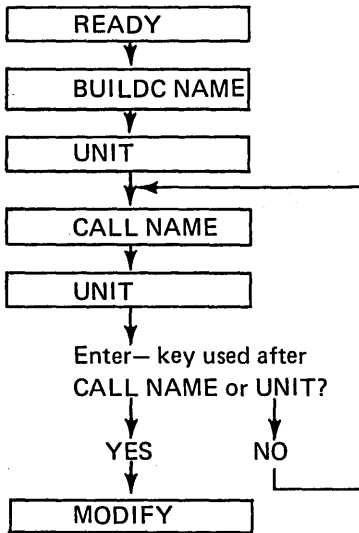
Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations	
DATE	mmddyy or ddmmyy	Required when job uses a file whose name and label are the same as those of another file on the same disk. (Response must follow format established during sysgen.)	
	OR		
	Press PROG START	System prompts FILE NAME for next file.	
	? (Delayed Response)	Forces operator to respond to DATE during CALL cycle.	
	OR		
	Press PROG START	System prompts FILE NAME.	
	No Response		
	Press PROG START	You don't have to respond to this keyword; you want system to prompt FILE NAME for next file.	
	MODIFY (Operator can use one, all, or a combination of the responses.)	LOG	Used only if CRT display or 2222 printer on system.
		Press PROG START	System prompts LOG DEVICE.
CANCEL		Cancel job.	
Press PROG START		System prompts READY or displays end-of-job halt.	
PUNCH		Change the system punch device.	
Press PROG START		System prompts PUNCH.	
FORMS		Change lines per page printed output for system programs.	
Press PROG START		System prompts FORMS DEVICE.	
Asterisk (*) Followed by Comments		Enter comment.	
Press PROG START		System waits for next MODIFY response.	
Statement number and comma		To delete an OCL or utility control statement in displayed procedure. Disk Sort specifications cannot be deleted in this manner. To delete Disk Sort specifications, you must enter the statement number and press PROG START. When the system waits for the corrected statement, enter an asterisk (*) in position 7.	
	Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response.	
	Statement number	To correct statement.	
	Press PROG START	System waits for correct statement.	

### Keyword-Response Summary (Build Cycle) (Continued)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
	INCLUDE	Add system program control statements to a procedure.
	Press PROG START	System prints 'ENTER INCLUDED STATEMENTS' and a 2-digit statement number.
	RUN	Tells system <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>The BUILD cycle is complete.</li><li>Run the job.</li></ol>
	Press PROG START	System runs the job.

### Keyword Sequence for OCL BUILDDC Cycle



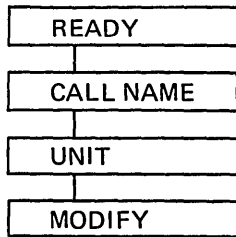
### Keyword-Response Summary (BUILDDC Cycle)

Keyword	Response	Considerations
READY	BUILDDC Press PROG START	None System prompts BUILDDC NAME.
BUILDDC NAME	Master Procedure Name Press PROG START	Maximum of six alphanumeric characters. Must begin with alphabetic characters. (A-Z or #, @, \$) Must not be DIR, SYSTEM, or ALL. Commas, blanks, quotes (apostrophes), and periods are not allowed. System prompts UNIT.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2 Press PROG START	Location of the disk where you want to put procedure. (Procedure is placed in the source library of the disk which the operator specifies.) System prompts CALL NAME.

**Keyword-Response Summary (BUILD Cycle) (Continued)**

Keyword	Response	Considerations
CALL NAME	Name of Procedure	Name of a procedure in the source library. The procedure can be an IBM-supplied procedure (RPG) or a procedure created by a BUILD or BUILD Cycle.
	Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts UNIT.  System prompts UNIT then MODIFY.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of the disk whose source library contains the procedure.
	Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	System prompts CALL NAME (or MODIFY if ENTER— used after CALL NAME).  System prompts MODIFY.
MODIFY (Operator can use one, all, or a combination of the responses.)	LOG	Used only if CRT display or 2222 printer is on system.
	Press PROG START	System prompts LOG DEVICE.
	CANCEL	Cancel job.
	Press PROG START	System prompts READY or displays end-of-job halt.
	Asterisk (*) followed by comments	Enter comment.
	Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response.
	Statement number and comma	To delete OCL or utility control statements.
	Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response.
	Statement number	To correct statement.
	Press PROG START	System waits for correct statement.
RUN		Tells system — a. The cycle is complete. b. Run the job.
	Press PROG START	System runs job.

### Keyword Sequence for OCL Call Cycle



Keywords that must be answered in every CALL cycle.

### Keyword-Response Summary (Call Cycle)

Keyword*	Response	Considerations
READY	CALL Press PROG START	None System prompts CALL NAME.
CALL NAME	Procedure Name Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	Procedure name from the source library directory OR RPG (the IBM-supplied RPG II compile procedure) System prompts UNIT. System prompts UNIT, then runs the job. Does not display the procedure except for statements with delayed responses. Does not prompt MODIFY.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2 Press PROG START OR Press ENTER—	Location of the disk whose source library contains the procedure. Print procedure. System runs the job. Does not prompt procedure except for statements with delayed responses. Does not prompt MODIFY.
<p><b>PROCEDURE DISPLAYED ON SYSTEM PRINTER</b> <sup>1</sup> (unless ENTER— key was pressed after CALL NAME or UNIT prompts)</p>		
MODIFY (Operator can use one, all, or a combination of the responses.)	LOG Press PROG START CANCEL Press PROG START	Used only if CRT or 2222 printer on system. System prompts LOG DEVICE. Cancel job. System prompts READY or displays end-of-job halt.

**Keyword-Response Summary (Call Cycle) (Continued)**

Keyword	Response	Considerations
	FORMS	Change lines per page of printed output for system programs.
	Press PROG START	System prompts FORMS DEVICE.
	PUNCH	Change the system punch device.
	Press PROG START	System prompts PUNCH
	Asterisk (*) Followed by Comment	Enter comment.
	Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response.
	Statement number and comma	To delete an OCL or utility control statement in displayed procedure. Disk Sort specifications cannot be deleted in this manner. To delete Disk Sort specifications, you must enter the statement number and press PROG START. When the system waits for the corrected statement, enter an asterisk (*) in position 7.
	Press PROG START	System waits for next MODIFY response
	Statement number	To correct statement in displayed procedure (LOAD NAME cannot be changed).
	Press PROG START	System waits for correct statement.
	RUN	Tells system – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The CALL cycle is complete.</li> <li>b. Run the job.</li> </ul>
	Press PROG START	System runs job.

- 1** A. Procedures with INCLUDE Statements  
 When a procedure contains Disk Sort source statements or utility control statements, the display part of the CALL cycle is more complex. See *Considerations During a CALL Cycle*, under *MODIFY; Including Control Statements* in Part I.
- B. Procedures with Delayed Responses  
 The procedure is displayed statement by statement (unless the ENTER— key was pressed after responding to the CALL NAME or UNIT keywords). When the system reaches a statement which contains a delayed response, it will display the statement keyword and wait for the operator's response.

The IBM 5496 Data Recorder Model 1 with System/3 Model 6 Attachment Feature or the IBM 129 Card Data Recorder with card input/output attachment feature provides card input/output capability for System/3 Model 6. The data recorder is selected as system input device during OCL prompting. (The directly attached 3741 Data Station Model 1 or 2, or 3741 Programmable Work Station Model 3 or 4 can be selected as the system input device in a similar manner.) Control is returned to the keyboard by entering a `READER` statement in the data recorder or by performing another program load procedure.

**ASSIGNING DATA RECORDER OR 3741 AS SYSTEM INPUT DEVICE**

	System Prompts	Operator Enters
At IPL time	DATE – READER–	current date {DATA96} {3741 }
Between jobs	READY – READER–	READER {DATA96} {3741 }

Following the DATA96 or 3741 response, all OCL must be entered in card image from the data recorder or 3741.

At the time the data recorder is selected as system input device the following switch settings must be:

Operator Console – DATA RCRDR switch to ON LINE

- 5496 Data Recorder –
1. Power switch ON
  2. AUTO REL switch ON
  3. Print switch ON or OFF
  4. All other switches OFF

129 Card Data Recorder

- 1. Power switch ON
- 2. PROGRAM MODE dial set to DATA READ
- 3. PUNCH-DIR PUNCH-VERIFY switch set to PUNCH
- 4. Print switch ON or OFF
- 5. REC ADV/CARD FEED switch set to AUTO

Directly attached 3741 Data Station or 3741 Programmable Work Station

- See *IBM System/3 3741 Reference Manual*, GC21-5113

**IBM 129 Programming Considerations**

The user should be aware of the following considerations when programming applications for the IBM 129:

1. System support for the 5496 also supports the 129.
2. Unique diagnostics for the 129 are not provided.
3. Object programs cannot be read or punched correctly on the 129 (whereas the 5496 provides this function). Therefore, the system function `LOAD*` is not supported for the 129.
4. The OCL command `READER-DATA96` is used for either the 5496 or the 129.

**RETURNING CONTROL TO KEYBOARD**

The keyboard is reassigned as system input device by doing either of the following:

- Enter a `/&` statement followed by a `// READER KEY` statement from the Data Recorder. These statements must be placed after a `// RUN` statement and before a `// LOAD` or `// CALL` statement.
- Perform a program load from the operator console.

## CONTROL STATEMENTS IN PROCEDURES

OCL statements that control the entering of other OCL statements are invalid in procedures. These statements (HALT, NOHALT, LOG, READER, PAUSE, and the PUNCH statement) are ignored when read from procedures during a CALL cycle and are not put in a procedure during a BUILD cycle.

## CARD FORMAT OF OCL STATEMENTS

The following OCL statements can be loaded from the data recorder or the 3741 (records from the 3741 follow the same OCL rules as cards from the data recorder). The parameters of the statements that are prompted in conversational mode are described elsewhere in this book. The statements that are allowed with card input are described in the notes following this list.

In statement formats, special characters such as //, and words written in capital letters are information that must be used exactly as shown. Words written in small letters, such as code, program-name, and unit, represent information that you must supply.

## OCL STATEMENTS

```
// LOAD Program-Name, Unit
// LOAD*
```

**Explanation:** An asterisk indicates that the object program will be loaded from the system input device. Program-name and unit parameters must not be included. The cards that contain the program must follow the RUN statement for the program and must be followed by /\* to indicate the end of the object deck.

```
// CALL Procedure-Name, Unit
// RUN
```

```
// READER { KEY
           { DATA96
           { 3741 }
```

```
// PUNCH { 3741
          { DATA96 }
```

```
// SWITCH
// COMPILE OBJECT-unit, SOURCE-name, UNIT-unit
```

**Explanation:** OBJECT-unit must be the first parameter on the statement.

```
// FORMS DEVICE-PRIMARY, LINES-number
// FORMS DEVICE-SECONDARY, LINES-number
```

**Explanation:** The DEVICE parameter is optional if read from cards. If read from a procedure via CALL cycle, the DEVICE parameter must be present and precede the LINES parameter. The LINES parameter must be present in either case.

```
// LOG { ON
        { OFF
        { CRT
        { PRIMARY
        { SECONDARY } [ EJECT
                          , NOEJECT ]
```

**Explanation:** The log device must be on when the system is in conversational mode. If EJECT/NOEJECT is given by itself, it must be preceded by a comma:

```
// LOG ,EJECT
// LOG ,NOEJECT
```

If neither EJECT nor NOEJECT is coded on the statement, EJECT is assumed.

```
// FILE NAME-filename, UNIT-unit, PACK-name,
// LABEL-filename, RECORDS-number, TRACKS-number,
// LOCATION-track number, RETAIN-code, DATE-date
```

**Explanation:** LABEL, RECORDS or TRACKS, LOCATION, RETAIN, and DATA parameters are optional. NAME-filename must be the first parameter on the statement.

```
// NOHALT
// HALT
```

**Explanation:** During card input, the system halts each time a /\* (end-of-job) or /& statement is read. The NOHALT statement allows the system to start the next job without a halt. The HALT statement is used to cancel a NOHALT condition. If the HALT and NOHALT statements are placed in a procedure they are not displayed when the procedure is prompted.



// PAUSE

**Explanation:** A PAUSE statement causes the system to stop until the operator restarts it. PAUSE statements are usually preceded by comments (\*) instructing the operator to perform some function on the system. If PAUSE statements and comments are placed in a procedure the comments are displayed during prompting but the system does not stop.

```
*  
/&  
/*
```

**Explanation:** /\* indicates end-of-job. /& is used as a delimiter and indicates that a new job is starting. If a 3 option (immediate cancel) was taken at a halt in the preceding job, the system looks for the next LOAD or CALL statement in the job stream. The /& statement changes this mode and tells the system to read the next // card regardless of what it is. In this manner a // READER KEY statement would be recognized, returning control to the keyboard.

## GENERAL CODING RULES

The rules for coding the OCL statements in cards are as follows:

1. // in positions 1 and 2.
2. One or more blanks between the // and the word that forms the statement identifier (LOAD, RUN, CALL, etc.).
3. One or more blanks between the statement identifier and the first parameter.
4. If you need more than one parameter, use a comma to separate them. No blanks are allowed in or between parameters. Anything following the first blank is considered a comment.

5. If you are writing keyword parameters (XXX-xxx), place the keyword first and use a hyphen to separate the keyword from the code or data.
6. If the parameter is not a keyword parameter, write the parameters in the order in which they are shown. Keyword parameters can be in any order except in the following cases:

// COMPILE      OBJECT-unit must be the first parameter.

// FILE          NAME-filename must be the first parameter.

7. All OCL statements except FILE must not exceed 96 characters. Because of the large number of parameters possible in a FILE statement, you can continue the FILE statement on additional cards. The rules are:
  - Place a comma after the last parameter in every card but the last. The comma followed by a blank indicates the statement is continued.
  - Begin each new card with // in positions 1 and 2.
  - Leave one or more blanks between the // and the first parameter.
8. Comments can be placed after the parameters on any OCL statement (except HIKEY parameters. See *Coding Multi-Volume File Parameters* in this appendix). Leave one or more blanks after the last parameter and then list the comment. Complete lines of comments are entered with the \*comment statement.

Place an \* in column 1 and start the comments in column 2.

## STATEMENT ORDER

<code>/&amp;</code>	should be the first statement of a job.
<code>// LOAD</code>	statement must precede RUN statement in job stream. If <code>LOAD*</code> , the cards that contain the program must follow the RUN statement and be followed by a <code>/*</code> statement.
<code>// CALL</code>	statement must precede RUN statement in job stream.
<code>// RUN</code>	statement must be last statement within the set of statements required to run a program.
<code>// READER</code>	statement must precede a <code>LOAD</code> or <code>CALL</code> statement and follow a <code>RUN</code> statement.
<code>// SWITCH</code>	statement must follow a <code>LOAD</code> or <code>CALL</code> statement and must precede a <code>RUN</code> statement.
<code>// COMPILE</code>	statement must follow a <code>LOAD</code> or <code>CALL</code> statement and must precede a <code>RUN</code> statement.
<code>// FORMS</code>	can appear anywhere in the job stream.
<code>// PUNCH</code>	can appear anywhere in the job stream.
<code>// LOG</code>	statement must follow a <code>LOAD</code> or <code>CALL</code> statement and precede a <code>RUN</code> statement.
<code>// FILE</code>	statements must follow a <code>LOAD</code> or <code>CALL</code> statement and precede a <code>RUN</code> statement.
<code>// HALT</code>	can appear anywhere in the job stream.
<code>// NOHALT</code>	can appear anywhere in the job stream.
<code>// PAUSE</code>	can appear anywhere in the job stream.
<code>*comments</code>	can appear anywhere in the job stream.
<code>/* (end-of-job)</code>	follows a program deck or data file entered from the Data Recorder.

## CODING MULTI-VOLUME FILE PARAMETERS

When coding card OCL file statements for multi-volume files these rules must be followed:

1. Each parameter that requires multiple entries must begin and end with a single quote (') and have the entries separated by commas.
2. The HIKEY parameter must contain HIKEYs separated by commas. When continuation cards are needed for HIKEY parameters, comments are not allowed on the cards, and the data must start in column four of the continuation card.
3. An apostrophe within a HIKEY must be entered as a double apostrophe or it will be decoded as end of HIKEYs, and an error will occur.
4. When using only one volume of an indexed multi-volume file, the HIKEY parameter must be included with beginning and ending apostrophes. The other file parameters must not have apostrophes.
5. To indicate packed keys, `HIKEY-P'xxxx, xxxx, xxxx,'` must be coded. All characters in packed HIKEYs must be numeric and all packed HIKEYs must be the same length.

Key length is not a parameter for indexed files when OCL statements are entered on cards. Sample job 2 under *Multi-Volume Files* in Appendix A would have the following four OCL file statements if OCL were on cards:

```
// FILE NAME-INVMSTR,UNIT-'R1,R2',  
PACK-'VOLI02,VOLI03,VOLI03,VOLI04,  
  
// VOLI05',HIKEY-'175-200-233W1B2,  
380-456-280W3R6,629-384-300W3F6,  
  
// 949-475-849W8F8,999-999-999W9F9',  
TRACKS-'100,193,150,193,80',  
  
// LOCATION-'87,8,49,8,8',RETAIN-P
```

**BUILD NAME**

When the system prompts BUILD NAME, the operator responds with a name for the procedure that will be put in a source library at the end of the sequence. (The operator's response to UNIT determines what source library the procedure will be put in.) At the end of the BUILD cycle, the system enters the procedure in the source library and puts the procedure name in the source library directory as a permanent entry. Restrictions on naming a procedure are:

1. Name must not contain more than six alphanumeric characters. Blanks, commas, quotes (apostrophes), and periods are not allowed.
2. First character must be alphabetic (A-Z or #, @, \$).
3. Name must not be DIR, SYSTEM, or ALL (these names are reserved for system use).

**Duplicate Procedure Names**

If the operator's response to BUILD NAME duplicates the name of a procedure already in the source library directory, the system prints a message and reprompts BUILD NAME.

The operator can:

1. Proceed — by typing a different name or the same name and a different unit.
2. Proceed — by typing the same name and unit again. The new procedure will then overlay the old procedure in the source library.
3. End the job — see description of error message options in *IBM System/3 Model 6 Operator's Guide*, GC21-7501.

**Deleting a Source Library Procedure**

The system gives a P (permanent) designation to all procedures entered into a source library during a BUILD cycle. Therefore, the only way to delete a procedure from a source library is to run the Library Maintenance Program. (For information about the Library Maintenance Program see Part II of this manual.)

**BUILDC NAME**

The response to BUILDC NAME is the name of a master procedure you want to build. The rules and restrictions are the same as for the keyword BUILD.

**CALL NAME**

The response to CALL NAME is the name of the procedure you want to run. This can be either:

- The name of a procedure entered in a source library after a BUILD or BUILDC cycle. (The operator's response to the keyword BUILD NAME, or BUILDC NAME determines the name of the procedure.)
- RPG (the IBM-supplied RPG II Compile Procedure).

If the operator does not know the procedure name, he can get a printout of the source library directory by running the Library Maintenance Program. (See Part II of this manual for more information about this program.)

The operator can call a procedure without displaying all its OCL statements by pressing the ENTER— key after responding to CALL NAME or UNIT. The procedure is loaded and run. The only statements displayed are those with delayed responses. The system does not prompt MODIFY after either the OCL statements or the included control statements.

## COMPILE KEYWORDS

### COMPILE OBJECT Keyword

The keyword COMPILE OBJECT requires a response (R1, R2, F1, or F2) if the system has more than one object library and you do not want to put the compiled program in the same object library where the compiler resides.

If the operator does not respond to COMPILE OBJECT, but merely presses the PROG START key, the system places the compiled program in the object library where the compiler resides.

- F1 refers to the fixed disk on drive one.
- R1 refers to the removable disk on drive one.
- F2 refers to the fixed disk on drive two.
- R2 refers to the removable disk on drive two.

### SOURCE Keyword

#### *In a LOAD Cycle*

SOURCE is prompted only when the response to LOAD NAME is the name of a compiler (such as \$RPG). The response to SOURCE is the name of the source program you want to compile. (This name must be the one you used when you put the program in a source library during a KSE or Library Maintenance Program run.)

For information about the KSE Program see the *IBM System/3 Model 6 Conversational Utility Programs Reference Manual*, SC21-7528. For information about the Library Maintenance Program see Part II of this manual.)

#### *In a BUILD Cycle*

There are two possible responses to SOURCE during a BUILD cycle: the name of a source program you want to compile or a delayed response (a question mark). Each response has a special significance to the system.

Response	Tells System
Name of Source Program You Want to Compile	You're building a procedure that will compile a particular source program. (The program must be in a source library.) The program name you supply must be the one you used when you put the program in a source library during a KSE or Library Maintenance Program run.
? (Delayed Response)	You're building a general compile procedure. You will supply the necessary source program information (name and location of the source program and where you want to put the compiled program) during the CALL cycle.

### UNIT Keyword

The response to UNIT gives the location of the disk whose source library contains the source program being compiled. Possible responses are F1, R1, F2, and R2.

- F1 refers to the fixed disk on drive one.
- R1 refers to the removable disk on drive one.
- F2 refers to the fixed disk on drive two.
- R2 refers to the removable disk on drive two.

## DATE

This DATE keyword lets the operator change the system date for a particular job. (The system date is used in headings on program listings, in headings on printed output, and in labels for new files.)

The system date is established at IPL time. This date is used for every job unless the operator overrides it.

**DATE (continued)**

**Overriding the System Date**

The operator can override the system date for any single job by typing in a new date when the system prompts the keyword DATE. The new system date is used only for the one job. When that job is finished, the system date automatically reverts to its IPL setting.

**Format of the DATE Statement**

Although the operator can override the system date, he cannot change the date format. The system date format is established during sysgen as either:

- mmddy (month/day/year) – For U.S. installations
- ddmyy (day/month/year) – For World Trade installations.

The three elements (month/day/year) can be separated by any non-numeric symbol (except a comma, quotation mark, or blank) or run together without any separation.

In a system using the mmddy format, for example, all of the following would be valid ways of typing May 12, 1971:

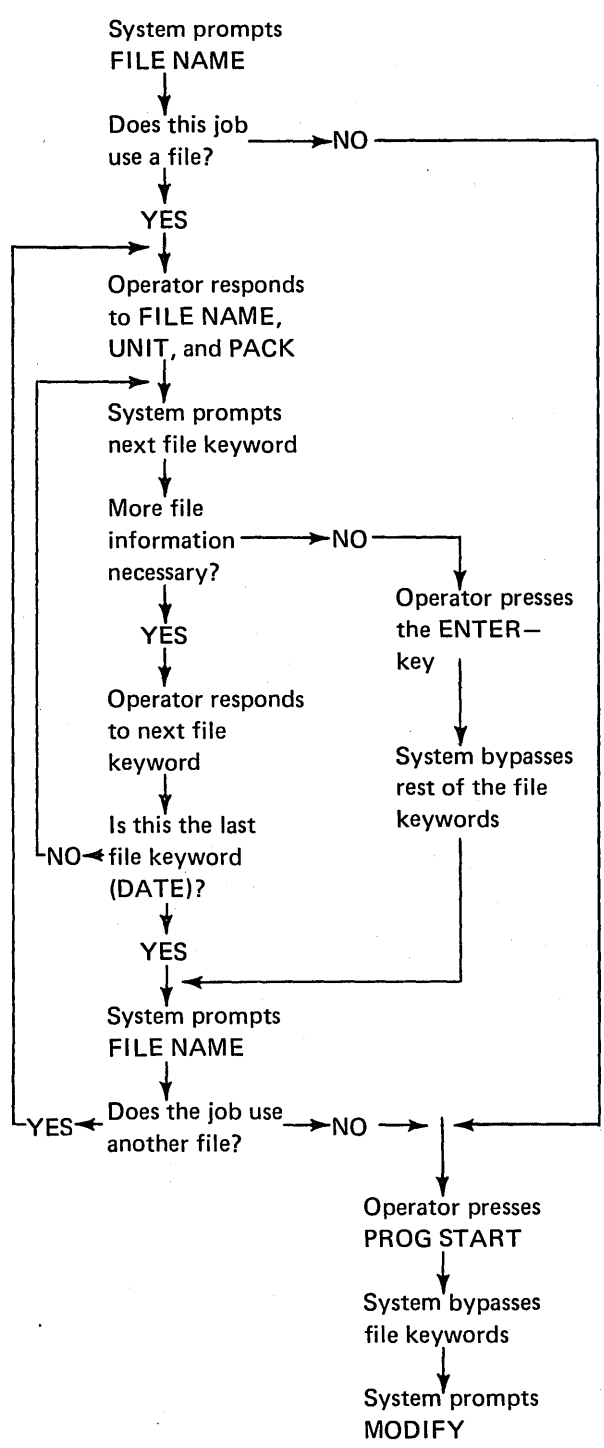
- 05/12/71
- 05-12-71
- 051271
- 5/12/71

**EJECT**

The operator can respond to the READY prompt with EJECT. The logging device will then eject the forms to the top of the next page at the end of each job. EJECT need only be entered to cancel the effect of a NOEJECT statement.

**FILE KEYWORDS**

**System-Operator Interaction During Prompting of File Keywords**



## FILE KEYWORDS (continued)

For every file used in a job, you must respond to the following keywords:

Keyword	Response
FILE NAME	FILENAME from the file specification at compile time <b>OR</b> Predetermined file name (for \$RPG, \$KDE, \$DSORT, \$DGSRT, \$COPY, or \$MICR).
UNIT	R1, F1, R2, or F2 (Location of disk where you want to write a new file or which contains a file to be processed.)
PACK	Name assigned to a disk by the Disk Initialization Program. This name can be one which identifies a disk on which you want to write a file during a file creation run or a name that identifies a disk on which a file is located.

### File Name for Customer Programs

For a file used in an RPG II compiled customer program, the operator's response to FILE NAME is the name in columns 7-14 of the RPG II File Description Specifications.

### File Name for \$RPG, \$DSORT, \$COPY, \$MICR, and \$KDE

For \$RPG's predefined file names, see *IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 RPG II Reference Manual*, SC21-7517.

For \$DSORT and \$DGSRT, see *IBM System/3 Disk Sort Reference Manual*, SC21-7522.

For \$COPY, see Part II of this manual.

For \$MICR, see *IBM System/3 Model 6 Utility Program for the IBM 1255 Magnetic Character Reader Reference Manual*, SC21-7527.

For \$KDE, see *IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 Conversational Utility Programs Reference Manual*, SC21-7528.

### Multiple Files

A job often involves several files. When this is the case, the operator must respond to several series of file keywords. The first time the system prompts the file keywords, the operator responds with information about one file. After the operator responds to DATE, the system will again prompt FILE NAME. This time the operator responds with the name of the second file.

When he has responded to the file keywords for all the files that will be used in the job, the operator should respond to FILE NAME by pressing PROG START. The system then bypasses the rest of the file keywords and prompts MODIFY.

A maximum of 15 file statements can be used for each job when running in conversational OCL mode. For a maximum number of files in card OCL mode, see *Maximum Number of Files in SWA*.

### UNIT Keyword

Possible responses to the keyword UNIT are F1, R1, F2 and R2

F1 refers to the fixed disk on drive one.

R1 refers to the removable disk on drive one.

F2 refers to the fixed disk on drive two.

R2 refers to the removable disk on drive two.

### PACK Keyword

Whenever a job involves a disk file you must tell the system the name of the disk where the file is (or will be) located, so the system can make sure that disk is mounted before the job is begun. To tell the system the name of the disk the file is on, the operator responds to the keyword PACK with the name assigned to the disk during its initialization. (The Disk Initialization section of Part II of this manual explains the procedure for naming a new disk.)

Although most installations keep a record of the names and contents of each of their disk packs, the operator can always get the name of any disk by running the File and Volume Label Display Program. The disk name is part of the output of this program.

### LABEL Keyword

When a file is created, the system enters a file name in the VTOC. The keyword LABEL refers to this VTOC file name. Unless the operator responds to LABEL, the name entered in the VTOC is the same as the operator's response to FILE NAME.

<b>LOAD NAME</b>
------------------

**For Customer Programs**

The response to LOAD NAME is the name of the customer's RPG II program.

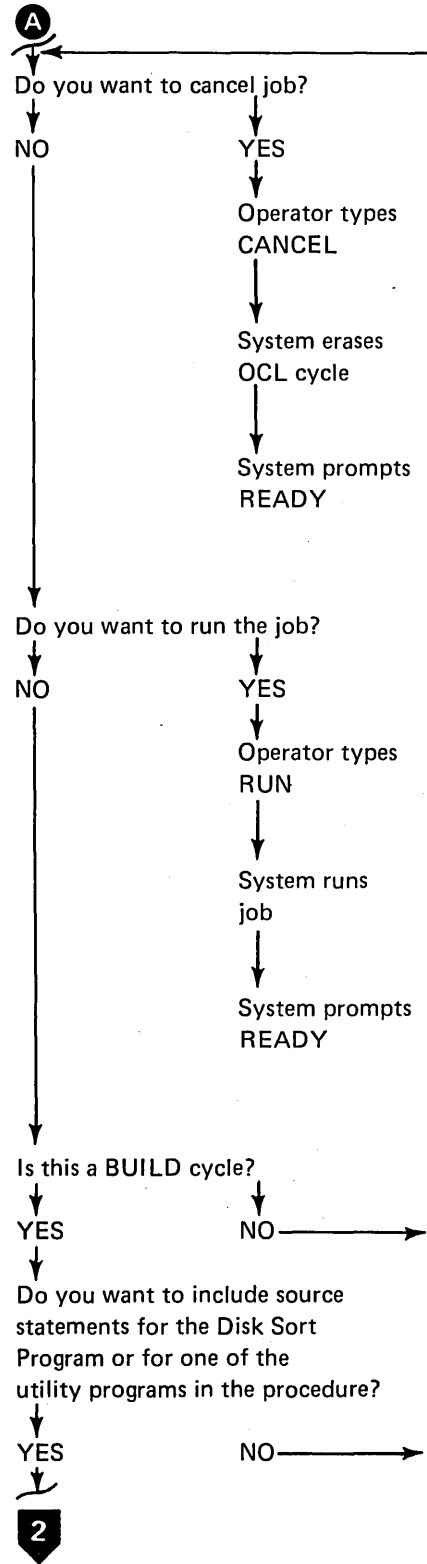
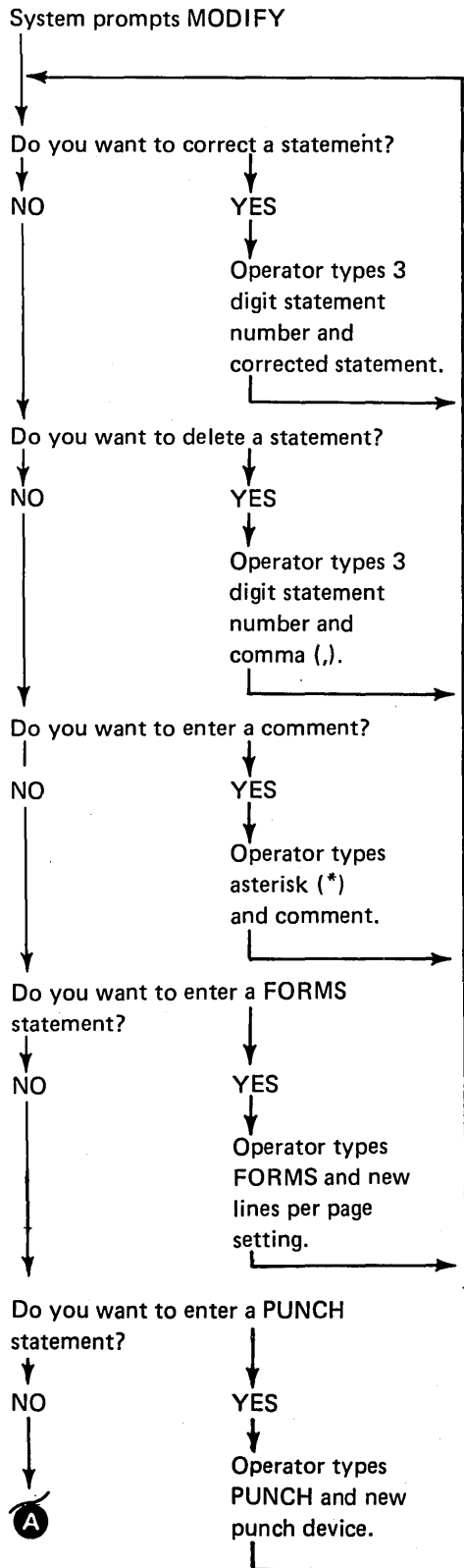
**For System Programs**

The response to LOAD NAME is the name of the specific system program you want to run.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Program</b>
\$ALT	Alternate Track Assignment
\$BUILD	Alternate Track Rebuild
\$CCP	Communications Control Program (Model 4 only)
\$COPY	Copy/Dump
\$KCOPY	Copy/Dump
\$FORT	FORTRAN Compiler (Model 6 only)
\$INIT	Disk Initialization
\$LABEL	File and Volume Label Display
\$DELET	File Delete
\$MAINT	Library Maintenance
\$KSE	Keyboard Source Entry
\$KDE	Keyboard Data Entry
\$DIU	Data Interchange
\$MICR	1255 Magnetic Character Reader Utility (Model 6 only)
\$RPG	RPG II Compiler
\$DSORT	Disk Sort
\$DGSRT	CCP/Disk Sort (Model 4 only)

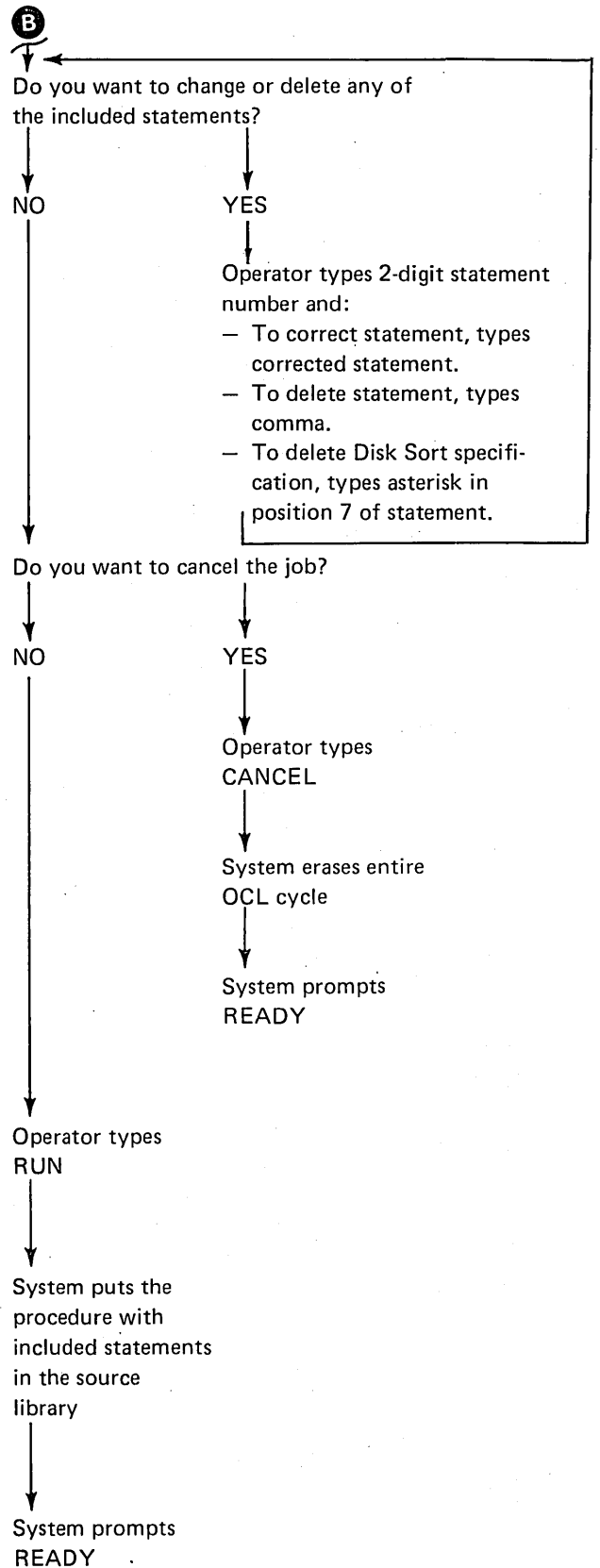
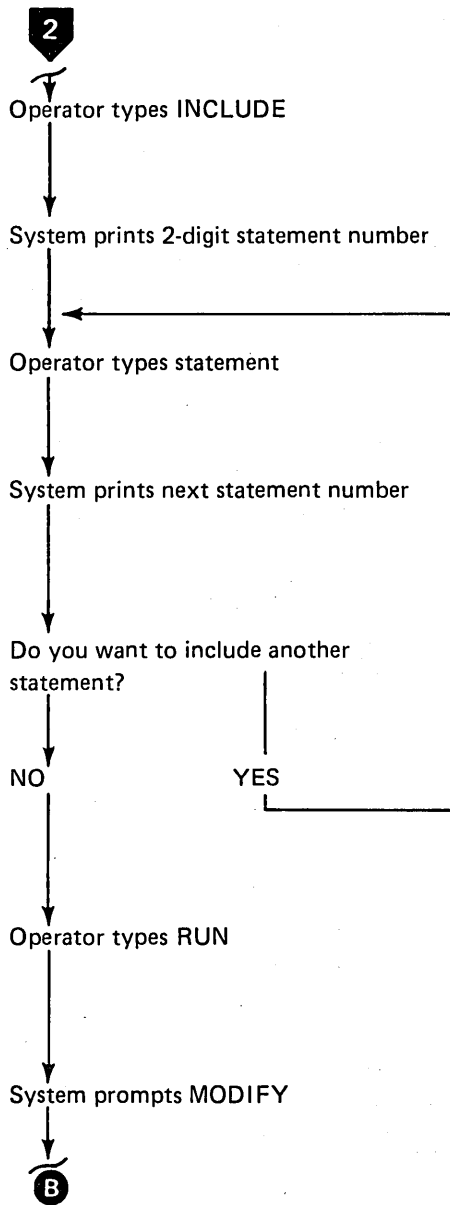
**MODIFY**

**System-Operator Interaction During Modification**





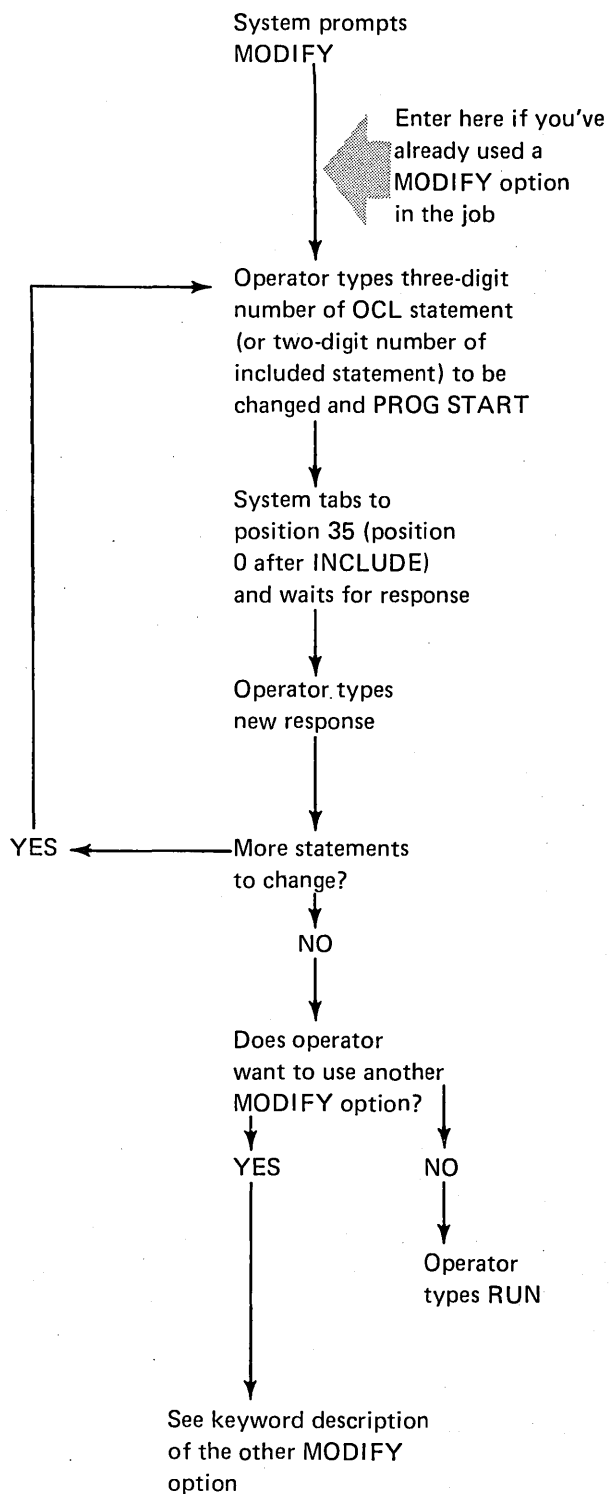
**MODIFY (continued)**



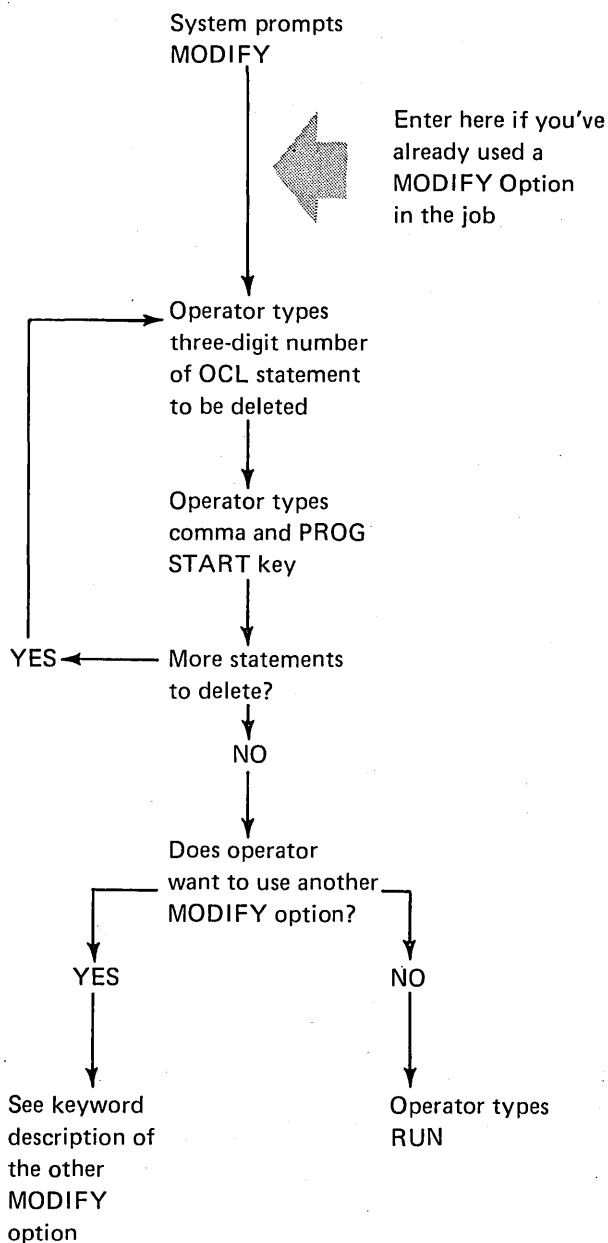
*Note:* To delete Disk Sort specifications, you must enter the statement number and press **PROG START**. When the system waits for the corrected statement, enter an asterisk in column 7 of the statement. Typing the statement number and comma doesn't delete Disk Sort specifications.

**MODIFY (continued)**

**Changing a Previous OCL Statement**



**Deleting a Previous OCL Statement**

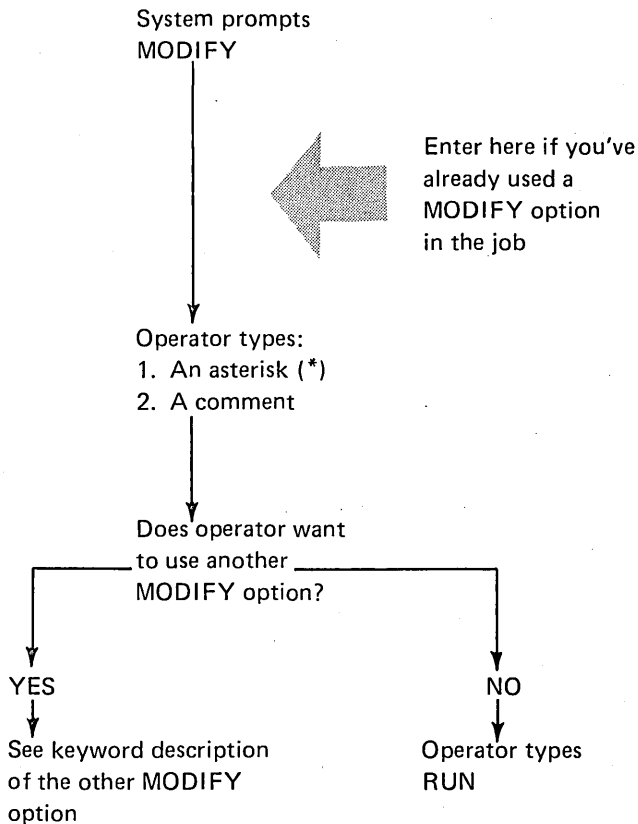


**Deleting Multiple Keywords**

When the OCL statement number for FILE NAME is deleted, all keywords for that file will be deleted from the cycle. For example, the LABEL or DATE keywords could be deleted from a file keyword statement without deleting the other keywords for that file. However, if FILE NAME is deleted, that entire file would be deleted from the cycle.

## MODIFY (continued)

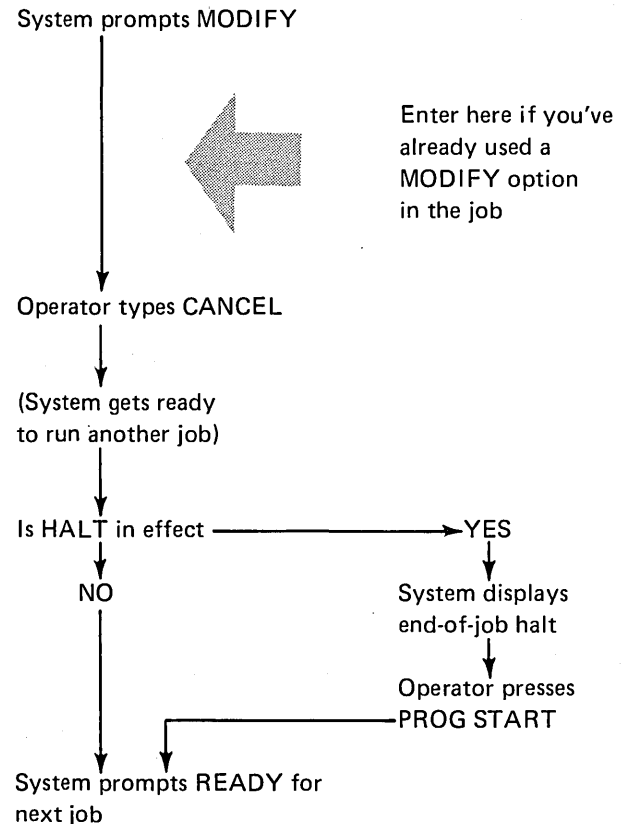
### Entering Comments



#### Points to Remember When Entering Comments

- The usual purpose of a comment is to remind the operator of something he must do (mount a new disk pack, for example) or to document a problem during a program run.
- After the operator types a comment, it is immediately displayed on the system printer.
- Comments typed during a BUILD cycle become a permanent part of the procedure. They are entered into the source library along with OCL statements.
- Comments typed during a LOAD or CALL cycle do not become a permanent part of the job; their only purpose is to help document the program run.

### Cancelling Job



#### Effect of Entering CANCEL During a LOAD Cycle

The entire LOAD cycle will be overlaid by the next OCL cycle.

#### Effect of Entering CANCEL During a BUILD Cycle

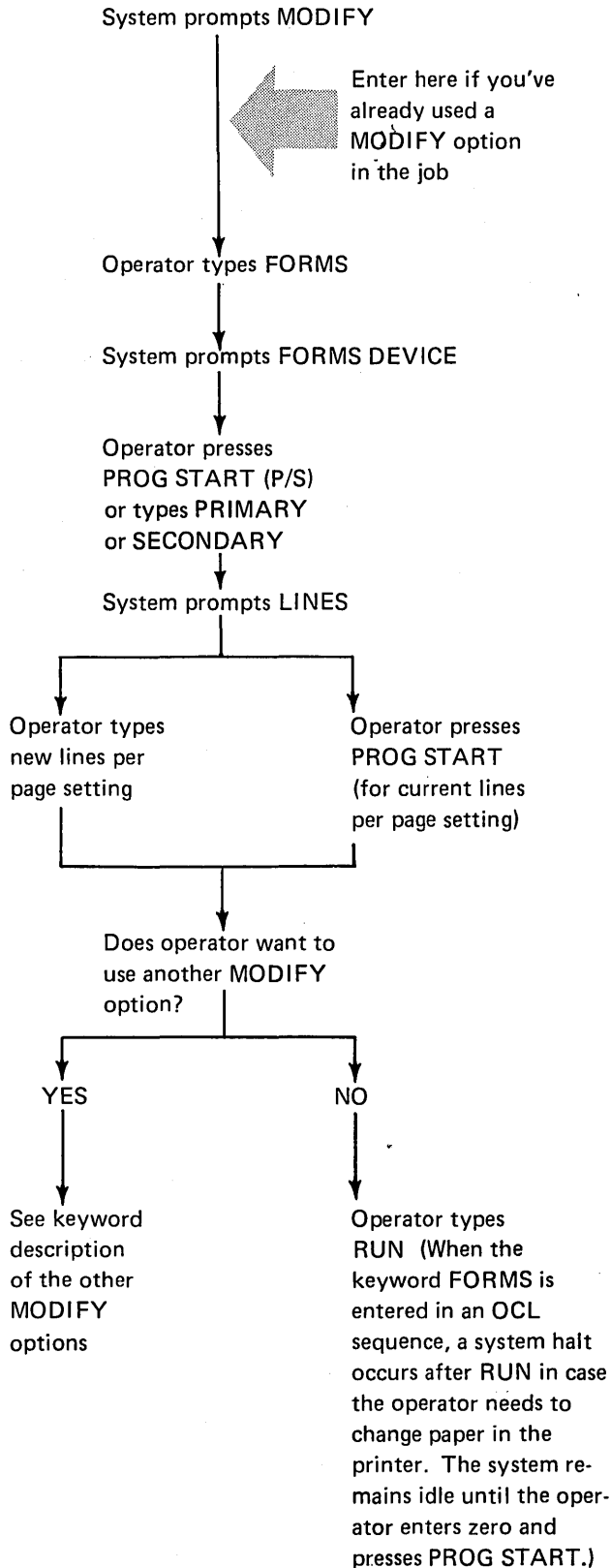
The entire BUILD cycle will be overlaid by the next OCL cycle. (If a duplicate procedure is being built, and CANCEL entered, the original procedure remains in the source library. Except: if CANCEL is entered after INCLUDE, neither procedure will be in the library.)

#### Effect of Entering CANCEL During a CALL Cycle

The entire CALL cycle will be overlaid by the next OCL cycle. The original procedure will be unchanged.

## MODIFY (continued)

### Changing Forms Length



### Purpose of FORMS

Standard output for Model 6 printers is 66 lines per page. At IPL time, 66 lines per page is established as the forms length unless a different value was specified during system generation.

To change the lines per page of printed output for RPG II programs, you code line counter specifications. To change the lines per page of printed output for system programs (utilities, Disk Sort, and the RPG Compiler), you type the keyword FORMS and an appropriate response. Minimum forms length is 12, maximum is 112.

If line counter specifications and an OCL FORMS statement are both used in one job, and if the specified lengths are different, the system will accept the RPG II line counter specifications and ignore the OCL FORMS statement.

The new lines per page setting (from either an OCL FORMS statement or an RPG II line counter specification) remains effective until another OCL FORMS statement or RPG II line counter specification for that device is read.

FORMS can be entered during the MODIFY phase of any OCL cycle. (The system never prompts FORMS.)

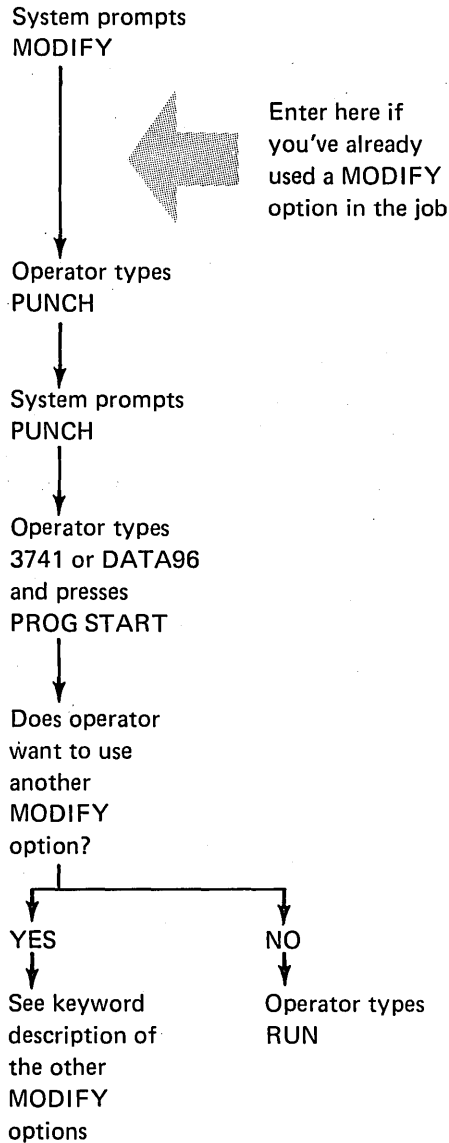
Whenever the operator types FORMS during an OCL cycle, a system halt follows RUN in case the operator needs to change the paper in the printer. Job processing does not resume until the operator enters a zero (option 0) and presses the PROG START key.

**MODIFY (continued)**

*Purpose of Punch*

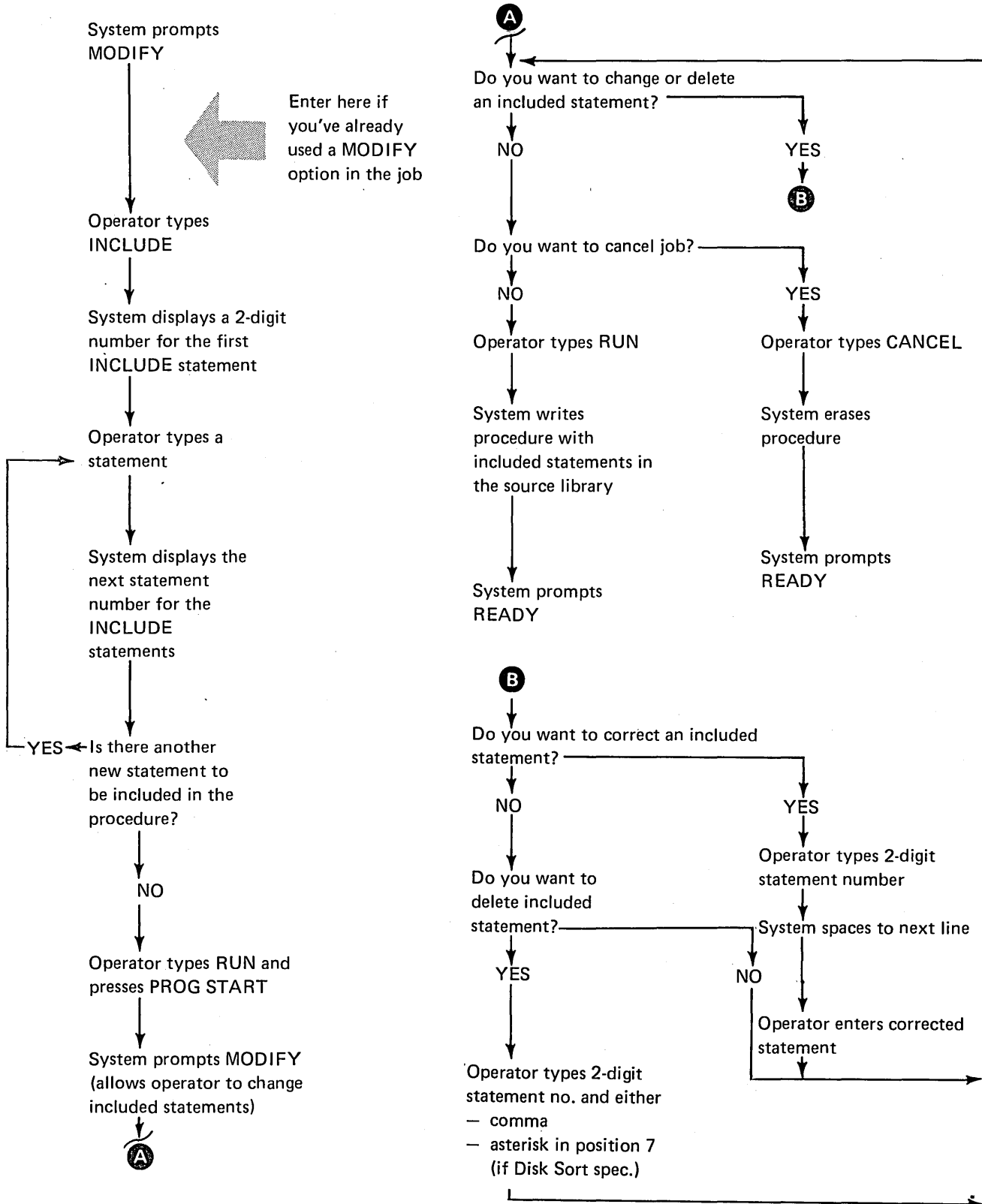
**Changing Punch Device**

The default punch device can be chosen at system generation. To change the punch device, the PUNCH statement is used. PUNCH can be entered during the MODIFY phase of the LOAD, BUILD, or CALL cycle (it can also be entered when the system prompts READY— see *The Job Cycle*). The PUNCH statement remains effective until another OCL PUNCH statement is read or until the next IPL.



**MODIFY (continued)**

**Including Control Statements**



Enter here if you've already used a MODIFY option in the job

## MODIFY (continued)

### *Purpose of INCLUDE*

The keyword INCLUDE lets you add system program control statements to a procedure. INCLUDE tells the system that the next entry will be a set of control statements for one of the system programs. (As used here, control statements refer to both the control statements for the utility programs and the sequence specifications for the Disk Sort program.) A maximum of 25 control statements can be included in each procedure.

### *Restrictions After INCLUDE*

After including statements in a procedure, the procedure cannot be changed. MODIFY is prompted to allow changing included statements. If CANCEL is used after INCLUDE in a procedure that overlaid a duplicate procedure, neither the original nor the new procedure will be in the source library.

### *Considerations During a CALL Cycle*

When the operator uses the CALL cycle to get the procedure out of the source library, the system displays the procedure in two separate steps: first the OCL statements, then the INCLUDE statements. The following shows details of the two display steps:

1. System displays OCL statements for the job.
  - System prompts MODIFY (to give operator a chance to correct any of the OCL statements).
  - Operator, after he has made any necessary corrections, types RUN.
2. System displays heading: INCLUDED STATEMENTS, then displays the INCLUDE statements.
  - System prompts MODIFY (to give operator a chance to correct any of the INCLUDE statements).
  - Operator, after he has made any necessary corrections, types RUN.
  - Model 6 runs the job.

If the operator presses the ENTER— key after responding to CALL NAME or UNIT, the job is run without displaying the statements or prompting MODIFY (the user program or utility that is run can display the control statements). Statements with delayed responses are still displayed, to allow the operator to enter the response.

## NOEJECT

Normally the logging device ejects a page when end of job occurs. The operator can respond to the READY prompt with NOEJECT. The logging device will then not eject the forms. The NOEJECT statement remains in effect until an EJECT statement is entered (either in response to a READY prompt or on a card OCL // LOG statement) or an IPL occurs.

## NOHALT

Normally the system halts when a job ends. The operator can respond to the keyword READY with NOHALT. The system will then prompt READY for the next job when each job ends. The NOHALT will remain in effect until a HALT statement is entered or an IPL occurs.

## READY

When the system is ready to begin the OCL sequence for a new job, it prompts READY.

The operator responds by typing the name of one of the four OCL cycles: LOAD, BUILD, BUILD, or CALL. The system then prompts the other keywords in the sequence.

(OCL cycles for the Model 6 are described in the *Summary of Conversational OCL* at the front of this manual.)

## RUN

RUN is the last entry in any OCL cycle. The operator types RUN when he is satisfied that the OCL cycle is complete and correct. The following table shows what happens when the operator types RUN during any of the three OCL cycles:

Sequence	Result
LOAD	Job is run.
CALL	Job is run.
BUILD	The OCL statements are put in a source library.

If INCLUDE statements are part of the procedure the BUILD and CALL cycles require two RUN entries. (See *Considerations During a CALL Cycle* under *MODIFY – Including Control Statements* in Part I.)

After the operator types RUN, the system processes the job and end-of-job occurs. The system then prompts READY for the next job.

## SWITCH

The OCL SWITCH statement allows setting the eight external indicators on or off.

The operator-system interaction involved with the SWITCH statement is different for each OCL cycle as shown in the following charts.

### Indicator Settings

The indicator setting has eight positions, corresponding to the eight external indicators.

The three possible entries for each position are:

- 1 — sets corresponding indicator on.
- 0 — sets the corresponding indicator off.
- X — leaves the corresponding indicator unchanged.

For example, if the operator keys in XXXX10XX:

Indicator five will be set on.

Indicator six will be set off.

Indicators one, two, three, four, seven, and eight will be unchanged.

### IPL Considerations

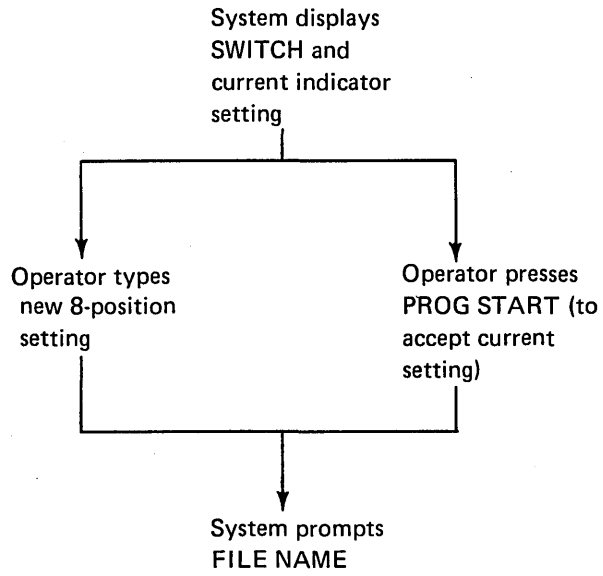
All eight external indicators are set off at IPL. The only way to set an indicator on is by responding to the keyword SWITCH with a new eight-position response containing a 1 in the appropriate position.

### Duration of SWITCH Setting

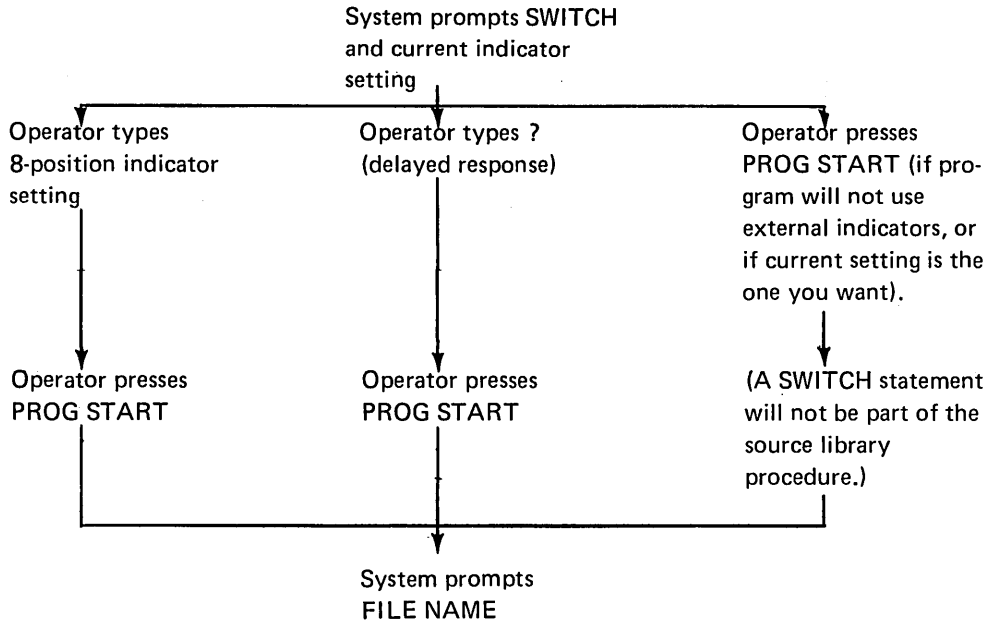
When an OCL SWITCH statement sets an indicator on, the indicator remains on until another SWITCH statement sets it off or the next IPL occurs.



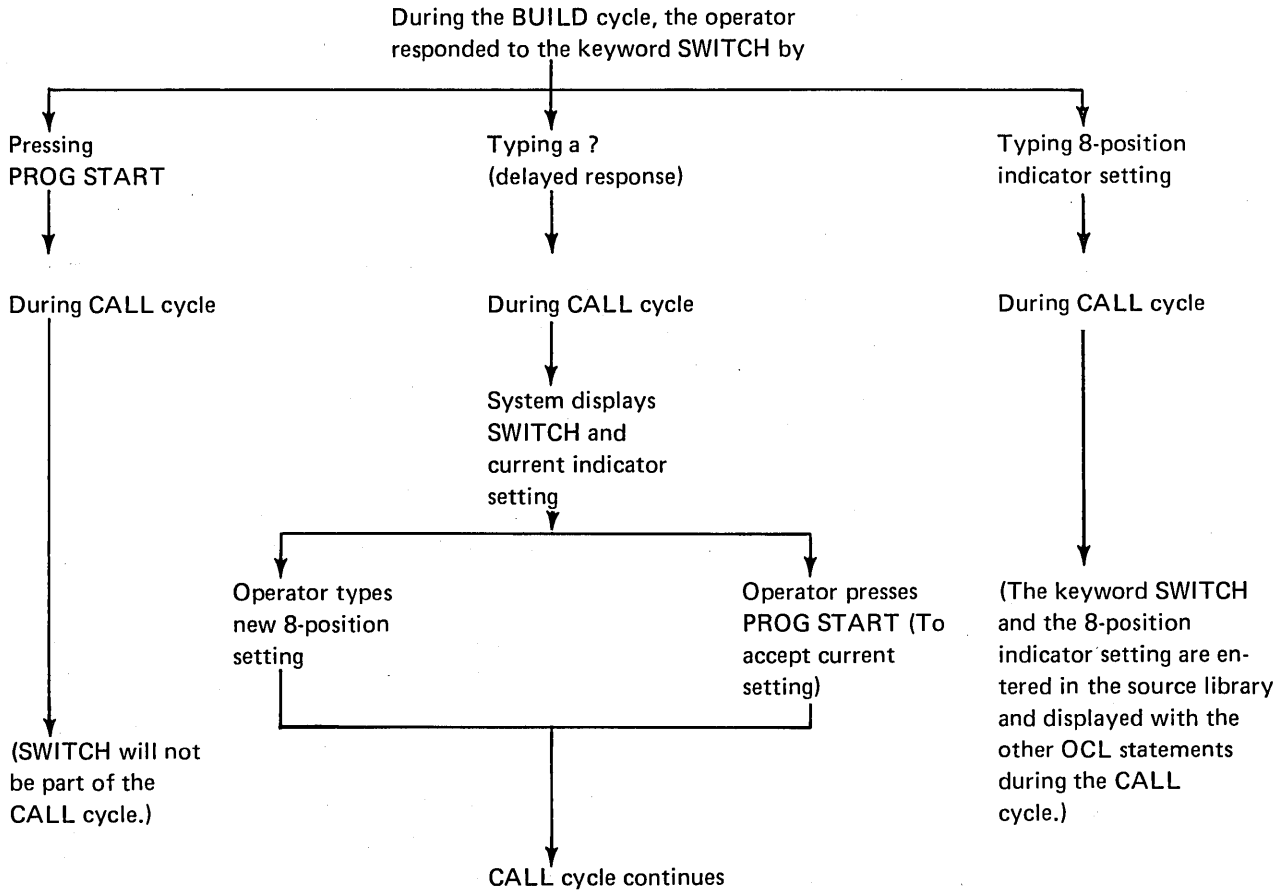
**Operator-System Interaction for SWITCH Statement  
(LOAD Cycle)**



**Operator-System Interaction For SWITCH Statement (BUILD Cycle)**



**Operator-System Interaction for SWITCH Statement (CALL Cycle)**



## MULTIVOLUME FILES

If a file is too large for one disk, you can continue it on one or more subsequent disks. Such files are called multi-volume files. (A volume is one disk.) Multivolume files can be online or offline. A file is online if all volumes are mounted when the job begins. The number of UNIT and PACK parameters are equal. An offline file has fewer UNIT parameters (shares same unit).

### Creation

The ways that you can create a multivolume file depend on the type of file you are creating. For a sequential and indexed file, the records are stored in consecutive locations on disk, in the order that they are read. One disk is filled at a time.

For sequential files, each volume must be filled before the next volume is loaded. For indexed files, each volume need not be filled. Each indexed volume is loaded until a keyfield is reached that is higher than the HIKEY for that volume, then the next volume is loaded. Indexed files must be loaded in keyfield sequence. A halt occurs if a volume is filled and there is not a record with a keyfield equal to the HIKEY for that volume. For example, suppose the HIKEY for a volume is 199. You load a record with the keyfield 195. It is less than the HIKEY, so it is loaded on the volume. Next, you load a record with the keyfield 200. Record 200 would be loaded on the next volume, and a halt would occur. The reason for the halt is that you did not load a keyfield record equal to 199 before you jumped to a new volume. This halt can be ignored. You can load the next volume and at some future time insert a keyfield record equal to the HIKEY. To insert a record after the loading sequence has passed, a random add must be done.

The date assigned to all volumes of a multivolume file is the system date that was in the DATE statement when the first volume of the file was created.

Indexed and sequential files may be either online or offline.

If using removable disks when creating sequential or indexed files, you can mount a disk, wait until the system indicates it is filled, then mount the next disk. If you have two drives, you can mount the two disks, wait until the first one is filled, then replace it with the third while your program fills the second disk. In either case, you cannot use more than 40 disks per job.

Space can be allocated on all volumes of a multivolume file if the volumes are online at the time of the allocation. Space can also be allocated for an offline file, other than the initial volume, but the packs must be empty packs or space (TRACKS and LOCATION) known to be available. You can use both fixed and removable disks with any on-line multivolume file.

Space on a volume of a multivolume file is reserved after one or more records are placed in that volume.

Direct files must be online. Direct files are created in a non-consecutive manner. When creating such files, you are required to mount all the disks on your disk unit at the same time. The maximum number of disks you could use, therefore, is two if you have only one drive, or three or four if you have two drives.

### Processing

The ways in which you can process multivolume files depend on the method your program uses to get records from the file. If records are read from a sequential or indexed file, you can mount a volume, wait until all of the records have been read from the volume, then mount the next volume. If you have two drives, you can mount two volumes, wait until all of the records have been read from the first volume, then replace that volume with the third while your program reads from the second volume. When you are processing files offline, the disks must be removable. When online, any combination of fixed and removable disks is acceptable, but all must be mounted and must remain mounted.

During the processing of a volume of a multivolume file, if the system determines that the file date on this volume is different from the file date on the previous volume, the system assumes that this volume is not part of the multivolume file. The results caused by the difference in dates depend on the access method you are using:

- If you are using an input access method (reading from the file), a halt will occur indicating that the system cannot find the file on this volume.
- If you are using an add access method (writing to the file), the system assumes you are extending the file and the following will occur:
  - a. The file date in the file label will be changed to the date of the previous volume.
  - b. The file label will be changed to reflect an empty file (all pointers are reset).

## OCL Considerations

Multivolume files, like other disk files, must be described in FILE statements. However, because a multivolume file involves more than one disk, some FILE keywords require a list of data or codes to describe all of the disks containing the files. This section explains the considerations for using these lists. Each list must begin and end with apostrophes.

### List Requirements

The PACK parameter requires a list. The UNIT parameter may require a list while LOCATION, TRACKS, HIKEY, and RECORDS require a list if they are stated. The considerations for using the lists in these parameters are included in the keyword discussions following.

**KEY LENGTH:** This keyword will be prompted if the response to FILE NAME indicated a multivolume file (see *Enter Minus* under *End-of-Statement Keys* in Part I). If this is an indexed file, you must respond to KEY LENGTH with a two-digit number 01 through 29. If this is not an indexed file pressing the PROG START key will skip the HIKEY keyword.

**HIKEY:** This keyword must be answered for indexed files. The highest keyfield for each volume must be entered. All characters except commas are allowed as keys. The length of each HIKEY must equal the response to KEY LENGTH and a HIKEY must be entered for each volume. If a HIKEY with fewer characters is entered, blanks will be put into the remaining positions. If an apostrophe is used as part of a HIKEY, it must be entered as two apostrophes or it will be decoded at the end of HIKEY list and an error will occur. When using only one volume of an indexed multivolume file, the HIKEY must be entered with beginning and ending apostrophes.

The keys in an indexed file can be packed numeric characters. To indicate that a file has packed keys, the operator responds to KEY LENGTH with nn,P where nn is 01-08. Only numeric characters (0-9) are allowed in packed HIKEYS. When responding to HIKEY, the number of characters entered per key is equal to  $2nn-1$ . If the KEY LENGTH response is 07, the HIKEYS would be 13 characters long.

**UNIT:** The keyword UNIT must be followed by a code or codes indicating where the disks that contain the file will be located on the disk unit. No UNIT parameter may be repeated. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one.
F1	Fixed disk on drive one.
R2	Removable disk on drive two.
F2	Fixed disk on drive two.

The order of codes in the UNIT parameter must correspond to the order of names in the PACK parameter.

When you are creating or processing a sequential or indexed file, you can use the same drive for more than one of the disks; however, the units must then all be removable units. If they are, you must not repeat the code for the drive in the UNIT parameter. When the number of codes in the UNIT parameter is less than the number of names in the PACK parameter, the system uses the codes alternately.

If F1 or F2 is specified, the file must be online multivolume.

**PACK:** The names of the disks that contain, or will contain, the multivolume file must follow the keyword PACK. (PACK names must be unique for proper functioning.)

When a multivolume file is created, the system writes a sequence number on the disks to indicate the order of the disks. The disks are numbered in the order in which you list their names in the PACK parameter.

When a multivolume file is processed, the system provides two checks to ensure that the disks are used in the proper order:

1. It checks to ensure that the disks are used in the order that their names are listed in the PACK parameter.
2. It checks the sequence numbers of the disks used to ensure that they are consecutive and in ascending order (01, 02, and so on).

The system stops when it detects a disk that is out of sequence. The operator can do one of three things:

1. Mount the proper disk and restart the system.
2. Restart the system and process the disk that is mounted if the sequence is ascending (for consecutive input and update processing).
3. End the program.

Consecutive input or update sequence numbers are ignored if the file was not created as multi-volume. If the file is multi-volume and the sequence is ascending but not consecutive, a diagnostic halt is given which allows the proceed option.

**TRACKS or RECORDS:** The keyword TRACKS or RECORDS must be followed by numbers that indicate the amount of space needed on each of the disks that will contain the multi-volume file. TRACKS or RECORDS must be specified. Any multi-volume file load requires a TRACKS or RECORDS keyword whether the file previously existed or not. The order of these numbers must correspond to the order of the names in the PACK parameter.

**LOCATION:** The keyword LOCATION must be followed by the numbers of the tracks on which the file is to begin on each of the disks you use for the file. The order of the numbers must correspond to the order of the names in the PACK parameter. If you omit the LOCATION parameter, the system chooses the beginning track on each of the disks. If LOCATION is specified for one disk, it must be specified for all disks. If the multi-volume file exists, LOCATION must be given and must be identical to the LOCATION parameter specified when the file was created.

**RETAIN:** RETAIN-S must not be specified unless the file is online multi-volume. If RETAIN-S is used for online multi-volume, it cannot be changed to RETAIN-T unless also done online.

**File Statement Summary**

KEYWORDS	INDEXED OR SEQUENTIAL FILES	DIRECT FILES
<p>Maximum Number of Disks</p> <p>Location Requirements</p> <p>Restrictions on Disk</p> <p>UNIT</p> <p>Operating Considerations</p> <p>Relation to</p>	<p>10 disks per file statement, 40 disks per job (number of HIKEYS plus number of packs cannot exceed 40)</p> <p>R1 or R2 for offline files No restriction for online files</p> <p>At file creation time only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• First disk can also contain programs, procedures, other files.</li> <li>• Remaining disks must be used only for the one file.</li> </ul> <p>Single Drive – Disks must be mounted one at a time. Two Drives – Disks must be mounted in sequence specified in UNIT statement.</p> <p>One entry in the UNIT statement can correspond to more than one disk name in the PACK statement.</p>	<p>Single Drive—2 disks Two Drives—4 disks</p> <p>No restriction</p> <p>All the disks used for the file can also contain programs, procedures, other files.</p> <p>All disks must be on-line during processing.</p> <p>A one-to-one correspondence is required between the entries in the UNIT statement and the disk names in the PACK statement.</p>
<b>INDEXED, SEQUENTIAL, OR DIRECT FILES</b>		
PACK	<p>When processing a file (or a subset of a file) the disk names must be in the same sequence as they were at file creation time.</p>	
KEY LENGTH	<p>Length must be less than 30 (01–08 if packed keys).</p>	<p>Used only for Indexed Files. For Sequential and Direct files, pressing PROG START will also bypass HIKEY prompt.</p>
HIKEY	<p>HIKEY responses must correspond one-for-one with the disk names in the PACK statement.</p>	
TRACK or RECORDS	<p>At file creation time:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of tracks (or records) must be specified for each disk.</li> <li>• Number in TRACKS (or RECORDS) statement must correspond one-for-one with the disk names in the PACK statement.</li> </ul> <p>During subsequent runs: TRACKS (or RECORDS) statement can be included in the OCL sequence. (For greater detail see keyword descriptions of TRACKS/RECORDS.)</p>	
LOCATION	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If specified: Addresses must correspond, one-for-one with disk names in PACK statement.</li> <li>• If not specified: System will allocate space on each disk.</li> </ul>	

### Coding Multi-Volume File Statements

1. The operator must begin and end each statement with an apostrophe.
2. The system displays information about each volume on a separate line.
3. The system assigns one statement number to the entire file statement.

### Changing Multi-Volume File Statements with MODIFY Keyword

When using MODIFY keyword to change a multi-volume file statement (other than HIKEY), the entire response to the keyword must be re-entered on one line, separated by commas, with beginning and ending apostrophes.

#### Example

	UNIT Statement is	Should be
041	UNIT— 'F1	UNIT— 'F1
	— R1	— R1
	— R2	— F2
	— F2'	— R2'

To change at MODIFY time

```
MODIFY
041      — 'F1,R1,F2,R2'
RUN
```

### INCLUDING DISK SORT SOURCE OR UTILITY CONTROL STATEMENTS IN A PROCEDURE

The INCLUDE option can be used during MODIFY time of a BUILD cycle to include Disk Sort source or utility control statements in a procedure. This is useful if the control statements are long or complex and the job is run frequently. A maximum of 25 control statements can be included in each procedure.

During the BUILD cycle, the INCLUDE option must be the last MODIFY option used. After the included statements are keyed in, the RUN entry then puts the procedure and included statements in the source library.

The CALL cycle will be different if the called procedure has included statements. After the OCL statements are printed, MODIFY will be prompted to allow changes to

the OCL statements. After the operator types RUN, the system will print INCLUDED STATEMENTS and then list the statements. MODIFY will now be prompted again, to allow changes to be made to the included statements. The operator types RUN to run the job.

For an example of Including Disk Sort Source Statements in a procedure see the *IBM System/3 Disk Sort Reference Manual*, SC21-7522.

An example of including Utility Control statements in a procedure is shown in sample job 10 (see *Sample Jobs* at end of this part).

### INCREASING FILE SIZE OF THE RPG PROCEDURE

The IBM-supplied compile procedure can only compile RPG II programs with less than 400 statements. To compile larger programs, the file statements must be modified to increase their size above 10 tracks (see *Modify; Changing a Previous OCL Statement* in Part I). Using the MODIFY option will only increase the file size for one compile. The RPG II procedure will not be changed in the source library. To change the procedure in the source library you must either build a new procedure (see *BUILD NAME* in Part 1), use the Library Maintenance Modify function, or use the KSE utility program.

### Maximum Number of Files in SWA

The scheduler work area (SWA) is used to temporarily save file label information while processing a program (see *Library Maintenance Program* for information on creating an SWA). The file label information is ten sectors, and it can contain a maximum of 40 entries, each one 64 bytes.

This manual states that a maximum of 40 files (or 40 volumes of a multivolume file (MVF)) can be specified for one program. In some cases, the maximum will be less. Generally, one label is required for each file. One F1 label represents one FILE statement for disk. For multivolume files, there is one F1 label for each PACK.

Additionally, one F7 label is used for each volume of an indexed multivolume file to contain HIKEY information.

The special allocate function of the SCP might require an F1 entry in the SWA even though it is not specified by the user. For example, the Disk Sort has an auto-allocate function wherein the system, not the user, locates work space for the sort. Also, some of the SCP utility functions, such as the WORK-YES option of \$COPY (COPYFILE intermediate), use the special allocate routines.

The following examples might help to determine the number of SWA entries required for a run. A direct file requires the same number of entries as a sequential file:

Type of Disk File	Number of Volumes	Number of SWA Entries
Sequential	1	1
Sequential (MVF)	3	3
Indexed (created as single volume)	1	1
Indexed (created as MVF)	1	2
Indexed (created as MVF)	3	6
Special allocate		
\$COPY WORK-YES	1	1
\$DSORT (auto-allocate)	Up to 4	Up to 4
\$MAINT	Up to 4	Up to 4 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Not including files specified for the file-to-library function.

For example, if you are copying (using \$COPY) a multi-volume indexed file on five volumes, 10 entries would be required for the input file and 10 entries would be required for the output file. In addition, if COPYFILE intermediate (WORK-YES) is used, one entry would be required by the \$COPY program.

Thus, by summing the requirements for your program, you can determine whether you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of SWA entries (40).

## PROCESSING LARGE INDEXED DISK FILES

When additions are made to a large indexed file, the amount of time needed to sort the keys of the index at end-of-job may become excessive. This sort time can be reduced by using a work file.

The work file is used to merge the added keys into the index and must be large enough to contain all of the keys added to the file. If the program adds records to more than one indexed file, the work file must be large enough to contain all the keys added to the file having the greatest number of additions.

The work file must be named \$INDEX44 and should be located as close as possible to the index being sorted. To compute the number of tracks required for the work file, use the following formula:

$$\text{number of adds} \div \left( \frac{256}{\text{keylength}+3} \right) \div 24 = \text{tracks}$$

After dividing 256 by keylength+3, the remainder should be dropped. After the other divisions, round the quotient to the next higher whole number.

If the work file is not large enough to contain all the index keys, the keys are sorted in the normal manner without using a work file. If possible, the work file should be located on a different disk drive than the indexed file whose keys are being sorted. If this is not possible, the work file should be as close as possible to the beginning of the file whose keys are being sorted. This minimizes the disk seek time.

The work file can be used with multivolume files. However, it cannot be located on a pack that contains one of the offline volumes of a multivolume file. The pack containing the work file must remain online while running the job. The work file must be RETAIN-S. If RETAIN-T or RETAIN-P is specified, the system will default to RETAIN-S.

For small indexed files (10 tracks or less) where the sort time is negligible, the use of the work file will not improve performance and should not be used.

To use this performance option, no change is needed to your source program. Also, programs need not be re-compiled to use this option. Only the additional OCL FILE statement is needed to use this option.

## ENTERING RPG II SOURCE STATEMENTS FROM THE KEYBOARD AT COMPILE TIME

The IBM-supplied compile procedure requires that the RPG II source statements be in the source library of a disk. By using the Keyboard Source Entry Utility (\$KSE), source statements can be format checked as they are put on disk.

The source statements can, however, be entered from the keyboard at compile time. These statements are read by the compiler and checked for format errors. If any errors are found they cannot be corrected and the compile will not be successful. The compile job must be rerun and all source statements keyed in again.



To key in source statements from the keyboard, the IBM-supplied compile procedure RPG is used. This procedure does not prompt COMPILE OBJECT, SOURCE, or UNIT.

### Inquiry Interrupt

Certain programs can be interrupted while they are being processed. A request for interruption is called an inquiry request (made by operation of the inquiry switch on the system control panel). Programs are usually interrupted to permit another program to run. Control is then given back to the first program.

The instructions given the compiler at compile time determine the inquiry type of a program.

The three types of programs include:

1. A program that cannot be interrupted (does not recognize an inquiry request).
2. A program that can be interrupted (does recognize an inquiry request). This is a B-type inquiry program.
3. An inquiry program that can only be executed when an inquiry request is made. This is an I-type program.

Usually I-type programs are read in only when a program is interrupted. In this case the inquiry program will not recognize an inquiry request. However, if an inquiry program is loaded in the normal manner (not because of a program interrupt), it can only be executed when an inquiry request is made. While this program is running, it will not recognize an inquiry request.

The inquiry interrupt involves these three steps:

1. When the program recognizes an inquiry request, a Roll-Out routine moves the interrupted program from main storage to disk.
2. The program for which the interrupt was requested must be loaded normally. The interrupting program may be any type. This interrupting program cannot be interrupted.
3. After the interrupting program is executed, the interrupted program moves back into main storage using a Roll-In routine. The interrupted program begins execution at the point of interruption and terminates in a normal manner.

The *IBM System/3 Model 6 RPG II Reference Manual*, SC21-7517, describes coding necessary to define inquiry programs.

### Restrictions During Inquiry

Inquiry always causes conversational OCL to be used, even if the interrupted program was running using the card OCL. The OCL statements cannot be read from cards during inquiry.

If the interrupted program uses offline, multivolume files (RPG II), the inquiry program must not require files on the same removable unit.

The log device cannot be changed during inquiry.

### CHAINED PROCEDURES

A finished job usually requires that more than one program be run. Several customer programs with utility programs between them may be required to complete the finished report. This sequence of programs can be put in chained procedures.

By chaining procedures, several benefits can be realized, including:

- Programs are always run in the correct sequence.
- Operator intervention and, therefore, chance of operator error, is decreased.
- File space can be saved. Files used to pass data from job to job can be scratched after the last program.
- Files are less likely to be destroyed by running non-related programs between programs of a job.

To chain procedures, the operator first builds a master procedure to chain together other procedures. This is done by responding to READY with BUILD C. The system will then repetitively prompt CALL NAME and UNIT, allowing the operator to respond with the name and unit of the procedures that are to be chained. When all procedure names have been entered, the operator responds to CALL NAME or UNIT with the ENTER MINUS (ENTER-) key. The system then allows the operator to MODIFY the entries. When RUN is entered, the master procedure is put in the source library as a permanent entry.

Master procedures can call other master procedures up to 9 levels. The original master procedure called (level 1) can call another master procedure (level 2), which can call another master procedure (level 3), etc., on up to 9 levels. Care must be taken to avoid calling a master procedure that was already called earlier in the chain or an endless

loop will result. A master procedure can contain only CALL and UNIT statements.

Delayed responses are not allowed in a BUILD cycle. However, the called procedures can contain delayed responses.

To run the chained procedures, the operator initiates a CALL cycle, responds to CALL NAME with the name of the master procedure, and responds to UNIT with location of the procedure. Each procedure is then called by the master procedure and run.

When running chained procedures, the operator is never prompted MODIFY to make changes.

If the operator presses the ENTER-key after responding to CALL NAME or UNIT, only the CALL NAME and UNIT statements of each chained procedure will be displayed. All other OCL statements (except those with delayed responses) and included control statements are not displayed.

If HALT is specified, the system will not halt until the last job of a chain is complete.

### OCL FOR THE IBM 2222 PRINTER

The IBM 2222 printer provides the MODEL 6 system with the ability to print on two forms. Each form has its own forms tractor. The left tractor is called PRIMARY and the right tractor is SECONDARY.

#### Using the FORMS Statement

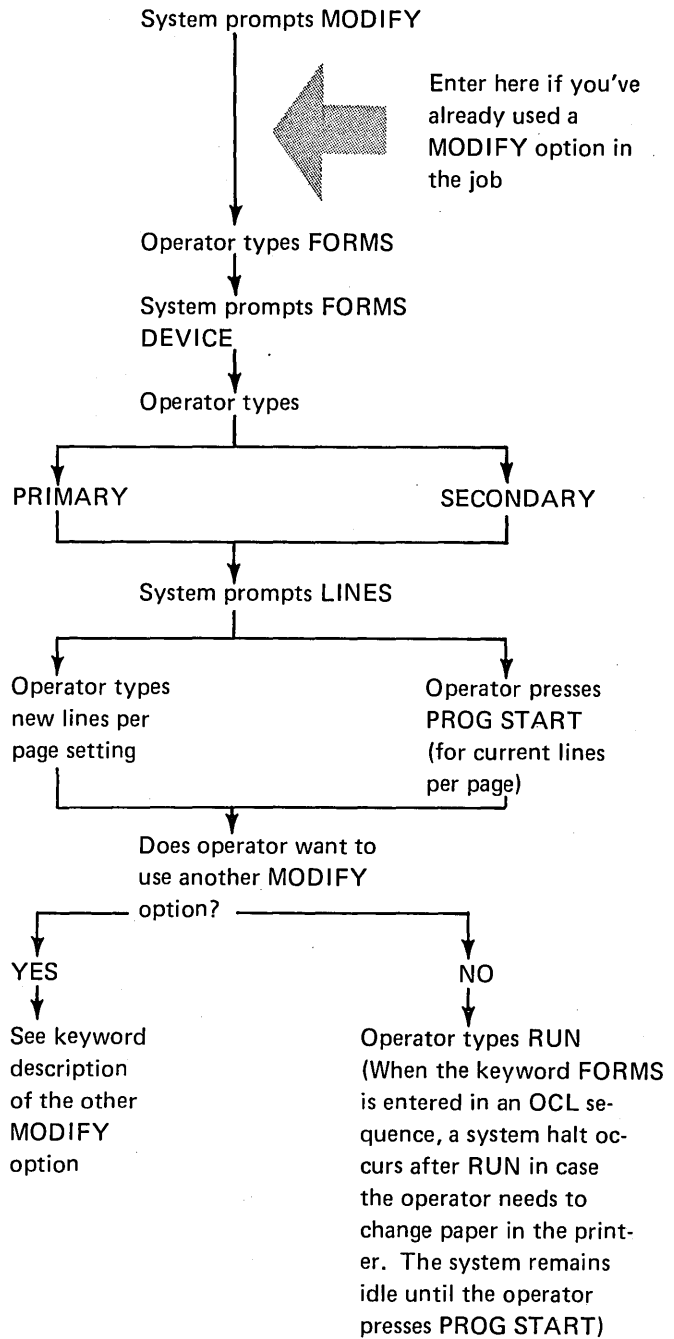
The lines per page setting of the PRIMARY and SECONDARY tractors can be different. (For example, the PRIMARY tractor could print 25 lines per page, while SECONDARY prints the standard 66 lines per page.) Separate settings are specified by entering different FORMS statements for each tractor during the MODIFY phase.

#### Log Device

The log device is used to print OCL statements and error messages and codes. The PRIMARY tractor will be the log device at IPL time when the 2222 Printer is used. The secondary tractor can be assigned as the logging device by entering LOG at either READY or MODIFY time. If the secondary tractor is the logging device, logged data begins in print position 110. (See *READY-Entering LOG and MODIFY-Entering LOG*).

If the log device is used for normal program output, the error messages and codes are not printed.

### MODIFY – Entering the Keyword FORMS



## OCL FOR THE IBM 2265-2 DISPLAY

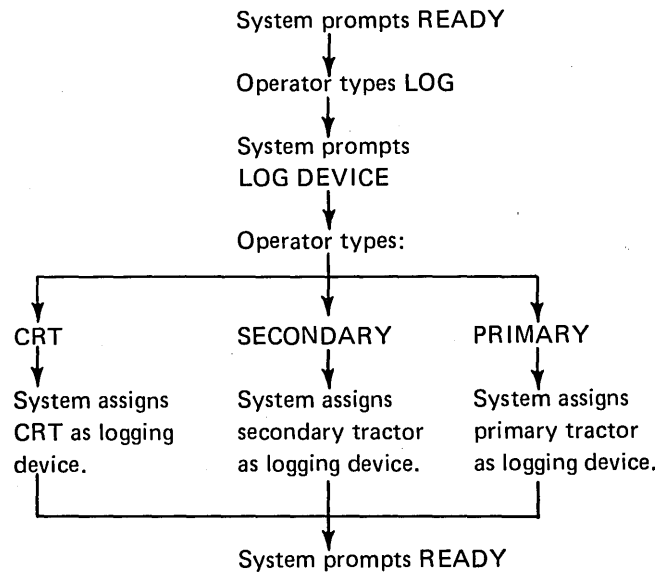
The IBM 2265-2 display unit can be used as the system logging device. The logging device displays OCL statements, utility control statements, job comments, and error messages and codes. The log device can also be used for normal output from the job being run. Error messages and codes are not displayed if the 2265-2 is used for normal job output.

When the 2265-2 (CRT) is used as the logging device, an additional 1K of core storage is needed for the system, thus reducing the core available for the user program.

The operator can assign either the CRT display or the printer as the logging device. If the operator changes the logging device the change remains in effect until either:

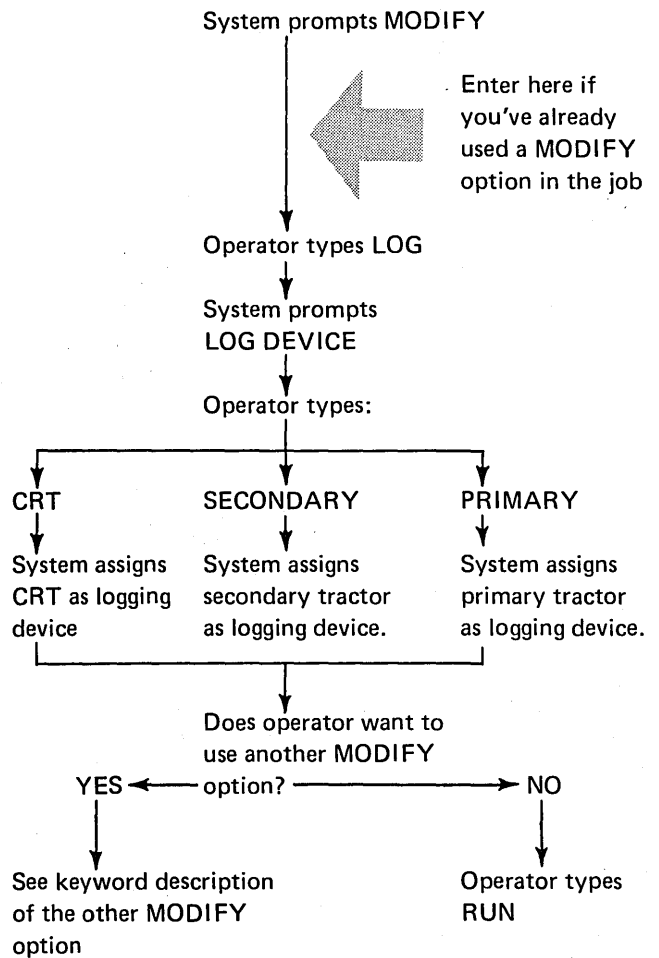
- The operator specifically overrides the change with another LOG statement.
- The next IPL procedure.

### READY – Entering LOG



*Note:* The CPU usage meter will continue to run during halts (other than end-of-job halt in halt mode) when the CRT is used as the logging device or when it is used by the customer program. To stop the usage meter, the system START/STOP switch should be moved to the STOP position. This will blank the CRT display, but the halt will continue to be displayed in the halt code indicator lights on the system console. When halt ABCD12345 occurs (end-of-job in HALT mode), the CRT is blanked and the usage meter is stopped.

### MODIFY – Entering LOG



## OCL ERROR MESSAGES

Message	Explanation
MESSAGE #00 – NO PROGRAM NAME GIVEN	Response to LOAD NAME was blank.
MESSAGE #01 – NO UNIT GIVEN	Response to UNIT was blank.
MESSAGE #02 – INVALID PROGRAM NAME SPECIFIED	Response to LOAD NAME was invalid.
MESSAGE #03 – INVALID UNIT SPECIFIED	Response to UNIT was invalid.
MESSAGE #04 – PROGRAM NOT FOUND ON SPECIFIED UNIT	The program indicated by your response to LOAD NAME was not found in the object library of the unit specified.
MESSAGE #05 – NO PROCEDURE NAME GIVEN	Response to CALL NAME or BUILD NAME was blank.
MESSAGE #06 – SOURCE NOT FOUND ON SPECIFIED UNIT	The source module specified by your response to SOURCE was not found in the source library of the unit specified.
MESSAGE #07 – INVALID PROCEDURE NAME	Response to BUILD NAME or CALL NAME was invalid.
MESSAGE #08 – MULTIVOLUME FILE RESPONSES NOT IN 1-1 RATIO	The number of responses to file keywords PACK, HIKEY, LOCATION, TRACKS, or RECORDS were not equal.
MESSAGE #09 – PROCEDURE NOT FOUND ON SPECIFIED UNIT	Procedure specified by response to CALL NAME was not found in source library of the unit specified.
MESSAGE #10 – INVALID SWITCH SETTINGS	Response to SWITCH was other than eight positions of X, 1, or 0.
MESSAGE #11 – NO SOURCE NAME GIVEN	Response to SOURCE was blank.
MESSAGE #12 – INVALID SOURCE NAME SPECIFIED	Response to SOURCE was invalid.
MESSAGE #13 – INVALID DATE SPECIFIED	Response to DATE in file keywords was invalid.
MESSAGE #14 – TOO MANY RESPONSES TO A MULTIVOLUME FILE KEYWORD	Only ten volumes are allowed in each multivolume file.
MESSAGE #15 – NO FILE NAME GIVEN	Procedure contains file keywords but no FILE NAME response.
MESSAGE #16 – NO PACK GIVEN	Procedure contains file keywords but no PACK response.
MESSAGE #17 – INVALID FILE NAME SPECIFIED	Response to FILE NAME was invalid.
MESSAGE #18 – INVALID LABEL SPECIFIED	Response to LABEL was invalid.
MESSAGE #19 – INVALID PACK SPECIFIED	Response to PACK was invalid.

Message	Explanation
MESSAGE #20 – INVALID RETAIN DESIGNATION SPECIFIED	Response to RETAIN other than P, T, S, or A.
MESSAGE #21 – INVALID TRACKS SPECIFIED	
MESSAGE #22 – MAXIMUM FILE STATEMENTS ENTERED	No more than 15 FILE statements can be specified in a job.
MESSAGE #23 – BOTH TRACKS AND RECORDS SPECIFIED	Procedure contains responses to both TRACKS and RECORDS.
MESSAGE #24 – INVALID RECORDS SPECIFIED	
MESSAGE #25 – INVALID LOCATION SPECIFIED	Response to LOCATION must be 8 through 405.
MESSAGE #26 – DEVICE NOT SUPPORTED	CRT, data recorder, or 3741 was specified but is not on the system.
MESSAGE #27 – INVALID DEVICE	Response to DEVICE, PUNCH, or READER invalid.
MESSAGE #28 – INVALID NUMBER OF LINES	Response to LINES not between 12 and 112.
MESSAGE #29 – INVALID REQUEST	Response to MODIFY was invalid.
MESSAGE #30 – INVALID STATEMENT NUMBER	Invalid statement number entered as response to modify.
MESSAGE #31 – TOO MANY UTILITY CONTROL STATEMENTS IN PROCEDURE—JOB CANCELED	
MESSAGE #32 – RUN OUT OF SPACE IN THE SCHEDULER WORK AREA	
MESSAGE #33 – RESPONSE REQUIRED—DELAYED RESPONSE IN CALLED PROCEDURE	
MESSAGE #34 – TOO MANY MULTIVOLUME FILE UNITS SPECIFIED	Number of units specified exceeds number of packs specified.
MESSAGE #35 – DELAYED RESPONSE (?) NOT ALLOWED	
MESSAGE #36 – JOB CANCELED	/* was entered or job was canceled because of errors.
MESSAGE #37 – MULTIVOLUME FILE NOT VALID THIS STATEMENT	Multiple responses not allowed for this keyword.
MESSAGE #38 – ENTER MINUS (-) NOT ALLOWED	The ENTER— key is only allowed for certain keywords in the BUILD cycle.

Message	Explanation
MESSAGE #39 – ERRORS IN PROCEDURE–JOB CANCELED	
MESSAGE #40 – ERRORS IN OCL STATEMENT	
MESSAGE #41 – ERRORS IN RESPONSE	
MESSAGE #42 – DUPLICATE PROCEDURE NAME IN LIBRARY	Response to BUILD NAME is already in source library of unit specified.
MESSAGE #43 – DUPLICATE PROCEDURE DELETED	New procedure being entered will overlay old procedure with same name.
MESSAGE #44 – INVALID KEYWORD	Keyword found in procedure is invalid, or response to READY is invalid.
MESSAGE #45 – TOO MANY UTILITY CONTROL STATEMENTS ENTERED	Only 25 utility control statements may be entered.
MESSAGE #46 – PERMANENT DISK ERROR	
MESSAGE #47 – RUN OUT OF SPACE IN PROCEDURE LIBRARY–JOB CANCELED	
MESSAGE #48 – INVALID SYSTEM DATE SPECIFIED	
MESSAGE #49 – DUPLICATE KEYWORD	A procedure contains a duplicate keyword.
MESSAGE #50 – RESPONSE REQUIRED	You must respond to this keyword; PROG START as the only response is not allowed.
MESSAGE #51 – TOO MANY PACKS, HIKEYS, OR BOTH SPECIFIED	The total number of PACK and HIKEY keywords cannot exceed 52.
MESSAGE #52 – DUPLICATE MULTIVOLUME FILE UNIT SPECIFIED	
MESSAGE #53 – INVALID RESPONSE DURING INQUIRY	Cannot change logging device or change to card OCL.
MESSAGE #54 – INVALID HIKEY SPECIFIED	Response (number) to HIKEY exceeds response (number) to KEY LENGTH
MESSAGE #55 – INVALID HIKEY LENGTH SPECIFIED	Response to KEY LENGTH is greater than 29, or is 00.
MESSAGE #56 – HIKEYS OUT OF SEQUENCE	Responses to HIKEY must be in ascending sequence.
MESSAGE #57 – REQUIRED KEYWORD DELETED	Job canceled.

#### CO-RESIDENT SYSTEMS

IBM System/3 Model 6 users who have co-resident systems (both disk system management and System/3 BASIC) can

transfer control from disk system management to System/3 BASIC by responding to READY with ENTER BASIC.

This section presents a typical sequence of jobs:

- Initialize a disk.
- Compile an RPG II source program.
- Run the compiled program.
- Copy a file from one disk to another.
- Build a procedure to run a multi-file job.
- Call and modify the procedure built in job 5.
- Update a multi-volume master file.
- Create a multi-volume indexed file.
- Maintain a multi-volume indexed file with packed keys.
- Include utility control statements in a procedure.
- Chain procedures.

Each sample job is organized into three sections:

1. An introductory summary explaining the job.
2. The OCL statements (and—where applicable—the utility control statements) for the job.
3. Explanatory notes on individual statements in the job.

The examples shown are actual computer printouts. End-of-statement keys used are shown in parenthesis to indicate actual operator response. These are shown for example only and will not be printed on normal OCL printouts.

Any response without end-of-statement key indicated is printed by the system without operator intervention.

In the following examples, the symbol *P/S* means *program start*.

## SAMPLE JOB 1. INITIALIZE DISK

We're going to use the Disk Initialization Program (located on the fixed disk on drive one) to initialize the removable disk on drive one. We want to:

- Initialize the entire disk pack.
- Do surface analysis only once.

The name of the new disk will be 12345.

Here are the OCL and utility control statements for the job.

```
READY-                                LOAD (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD                               NAME-    $INIT (P/S)
011                                     UNIT-    F1 (ENTER-)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)
  ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// UIN UNIT-R1,TYPE-PRIMARY (P/S)
  ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// VOL PACK-12345 (P/S)
  ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END (P/S)
```

### Explanation

- 010 LOAD NAME – \$INIT  
\$INIT is the system name for the Disk Initialization Program.
- 011 UNIT – F1  
The Disk Initialization Program is located on the fixed disk on drive one. Pressing ENTER— instead of PROG START to end response causes DATE, SWITCH, and FILE keywords to be bypassed.
- // UIN UNIT – R1, TYPE-PRIMARY
  1. Tells the system to initialize the removable disk on drive one.
  2. Because no other parameters are entered in the UIN statement, the program will:
    - Initialize the entire pack.
    - Read and verify the test data on the pack one time.
- // VOL PACK— 12345 – \$INIT will enter the disk name 12345 in the VTOC. Whenever a file from this disk is used in a job, the operator must type 12345 when the system prompts PACK.
- // END



## SAMPLE JOB 2. COMPILE AN RPG II SOURCE PROGRAM

We're going to use the IBM-supplied procedure RPGB (located in the source library on the fixed disk on drive one) to compile a source program INVUPD (an inventory update) located on R1. The RPG II Compiler (the program to compile RPG II source programs) is also located on R1. We want to put the compiled program in the object library on R1. Here are the OCL statements for the job.

### Explanation

- 000 CALL NAME — RPGB  
Tells the system you want to use the IBM-supplied Compile Procedure (RPGB).
- 010 LOAD NAME — \$RPG  
Tells the system you want to use the RPG II Compiler (the program to compile RPG II source programs).
- 011 UNIT — R1  
The RPG II Compiler is located on R1.
- 020 COMPILE OBJECT — F1  
The object program will be put in the object library of the disk on F1.
- 021 SOURCE — INVUPD  
The SOURCE statement in the RPGB procedure requires a delayed response. When the system reaches the SOURCE statement in the display sequence, it prompts SOURCE and waits for the operator's response.
- 022 UNIT — R1  
The response tells the system that the program to be compiled (INVUPD) is located on R1.
- 020 MODIFY — R1

1. System prompts MODIFY.

2. Operator types Q20, telling system he wants to change that statement. (He does not want the system to put the compiled program on F1.)

3. System tabs to position 37 and waits for response.

4. Operator types new response — R1. The system will put the compiled program on R1.

```

READY-
000 CALL          NAME--          CALL (P/S)
                   RPGB (P/S)
001              UNIT--          F1 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-$RPG
011              UNIT-R1
020 COMPILE      OBJECT-F1
021              SOURCE--        INVUPD (P/S)
022              UNIT-R1
030 FILE         NAME-$WORK
031              UNIT-F1
032              PACK-F1F1F1
033              TRACKS-20
034              RETAIN-S
040 FILE         NAME-$SOURCE
041              UNIT-F1
042              PACK-F1F1F1
043              TRACKS-20
044              RETAIN-S
*****
MODIFY
020 (P/S)                R1 (P/S)
RUN (P/S)

```

### SAMPLE JOB 3. PROCESS CUSTOMER PROGRAM "INVUPD"

We're going to run the customer program INVUPD, compiled in SAMPLE JOB 2 and located on the removable disk on drive one. The job uses one file, INV, located on R2. The name of the disk which contains the file INV is 123456. Here are the OCL statements for the job.

```
READY-                                LOAD (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-                INVUPD (P/S)
011              UNIT-                R1 (P/S)
020 DATE    (12/08/70) -              (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -              (P/S)
040 FILE        NAME-                INV (P/S)
041              UNIT-                R2 (P/S)
042              PACK-                123456 (P/S)
043              LABEL-              (ENTER-)
050 FILE        NAME-                (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)
```

#### Explanation

- 020 DATE — (12/08/70)  
We'll use the current system date for the job.
- 030 SWITCH — (00000000) — (P/S)  
The program doesn't use external indicators so the operator doesn't care about the switch setting and responds by pressing the PROG START key.
- 043 LABEL — Press the ENTER— key  
Responding to LABEL by pressing the ENTER— key tells the system to bypass the rest of the file keywords and prompt FILE NAME.
- 050 FILE NAME — (P/S)  
Responding to FILE NAME by pressing PROG START causes the system to bypass the rest of the file keywords and prompt MODIFY.

**SAMPLE JOB 4. COPY FILE DISK TO DISK**

We're going to copy an employee master file from R1 to R2. The second file will serve as a back-up in case the original file is damaged in some way, such as track becoming defective or a portion of the file being overlaid. When the master file was created the programmer:

1. Responded to FILE NAME with EMASTFIL.
2. Responded to PACK with VOL06.
3. Responded to LABEL with EMPMAST.
4. Responded to TRACKS with 15.

These responses caused the system to put the name EMPMAST in the VTOC on VOL06.

Here are the OCL and utility control statements we will use to copy the master file from R1 to R2.

```

READY-                                LOAD (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME--              $COPY (P/S)
011              UNIT--              F1 (P/S)
020 DATE (12/08/70) -                (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -              (P/S)
040 FILE          NAME--              COPYIN (P/S)
041              UNIT--              R1 (P/S)
042              PACK--              VOL06 (P/S)
043              LABEL--             EMPMAST (ENTER-)
050 FILE          NAME--              COPYO (P/S)
051              UNIT--              R2 (P/S)
052              PACK--              VOL07 (P/S)
053              LABEL--             EMPMAST2 (P/S)
054              RECORDS--           (P/S)
055              TRACKS--            15 (P/S)
056              LOCATION--          (P/S)
057              RETAIN--            F (ENTER-)
060 FILE          NAME--
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)
  ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-DISK (P/S)
  ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END (P/S)

```

## Explanation

- 010 LOAD NAME – \$COPY  
\$COPY is the system name for the Copy/Dump Program.
- 011 UNIT – F1  
The Copy/Dump Program is on F1.
- 020 DATE – (xx/xx/xx)  
We will use the current system date for the job.
- 030 SWITCH – (00000000)  
The program does not use external indicators, so operator does not care about the switch setting and responds by pressing PROG START.
- 040 FILE NAME – COPYIN  
COPYIN is the predefined file name you must use for the input file whenever you use Copy/Dump Program.
- 043 LABEL – EMPMAST  
EMPMAST is the VTOC file name for the COPYIN file. You must supply this name so the system knows which file to use for COPYIN. Pressing the ENTER— key causes the system to bypass the rest of the file keywords and prompt FILE NAME.
- 050 FILE NAME – COPYO  
COPYO is the predefined file name you must use for the output file whenever you use the Copy/Dump Program.
- 053 LABEL – EMPMAST2  
The system enters EMPMAST2 in the VTOC on VOL07. EMPMAST2 is the name by which the system will identify the back-up file.
- 055 TRACKS – 15  
Because we are creating a new file, we must respond to one of the space keywords (TRACKS and RECORDS). We specify 15 tracks because that is what we specified for the original file.
- 057 RETAIN – P  
The back-up file is to be permanent to protect it against inadvertent overlying. Pressing the ENTER— key causes the system to bypass the rest of the file keywords and prompt FILE NAME.
- COPYFILE OUTPUT – DISK  
The COPYFILE statement tells the program to copy the designated file from R1 to R2.

**SAMPLE JOB 5. MULTI-FILE BUILD**

Each day the customer runs a daily transaction job which creates a daily transaction file. Each day's file has a different name and date. We are going to build a procedure to use these daily files to create a weekly transaction file (WKLYTR). The weekly transaction program is located in the object library of fixed disk 1.

```

READY-                                BUILD (P/S)
000 BUILD                             WTR (P/S)
001                                     R2 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD                               WKYRUN (P/S)
011                                     F1 (P/S)
020 DATE                               (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000)                 11111XXX (P/S)
040 FILE                               MONTR MONDAYS FILE (P/S)
041                                     F1 (P/S)
042                                     PACK08 (P/S)
043                                     LABEL- (P/S)
044                                     RECORDS- (P/S)
045                                     TRACKS- (P/S)
046                                     LOCATION- (P/S)
047                                     RETAIN- (P/S)
048                                     DATE- ? (P/S)
050 FILE                               TUETR TUESDAYS FILE (P/S)
051                                     F1 (P/S)
052                                     PACK08 (P/S)
053                                     LABEL- (P/S)
054                                     RECORDS- (P/S)
055                                     TRACKS- (P/S)
056                                     LOCATION- (P/S)
057                                     RETAIN- (P/S)
058                                     DATE- ? (P/S)
060 FILE                               WEDTR WEDNESDAYS FILE (P/S)
061                                     F1 (P/S)
062                                     PACK08 (P/S)
063                                     LABEL- (P/S)
064                                     RECORDS- (P/S)
065                                     TRACKS- (P/S)
066                                     LOCATION- (P/S)
067                                     RETAIN- (P/S)
068                                     DATE- ? (P/S)
070 FILE                               THUTR THURSDAYS FILE (P/S)
071                                     F1 (P/S)
072                                     PACK08 (P/S)
073                                     LABEL- (P/S)
074                                     RECORDS- (P/S)
075                                     TRACKS- (P/S)
076                                     LOCATION- (P/S)
077                                     RETAIN- (P/S)
078                                     DATE- ? (P/S)
080 FILE                               FRITR FRIDAYS FILE (P/S)
081                                     F1 (P/S)
082                                     PACK08 (P/S)
083                                     LABEL- (P/S)
084                                     RECORDS- (P/S)

```

```

085          TRACKS-          (P/S)
086    LOCATION-          (P/S)
087          RETAIN-          (P/S)
088          DATE-          ? (P/S)
090 FILE     NAME-          WKLYTR (P/S)
091          UNIT-          R1 (P/S)
092          PACK-          PACK04 (P/S)
093          LABEL-          (P/S)
094          RECORDS-        500 (P/S)
095    LOCATION-          (P/S)
096          RETAIN-          P (ENTER-)
100 FILE     NAME-          (P/S)

```

\*\*\*\*\*

MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

Explanation

- 000 BUILD NAME — WTR  
The procedure name in the source library is WTR.
- 001 UNIT — R2  
The procedure is located on unit R2.
- 020 DATE — (P/S)  
The date statement is not part of the procedure.
- 030 SWITCH — 11111XXX (P/S)  
(00000000) The first five external indicators are used to tell the program which input files are to be used (Monday – Friday).
- 040 FILE NAME — MONTR MONDAYS FILE  
The file name for each day is different. The comment (MONDAYS FILE) will become part of the procedure.
- 048 DATE — ? (P/S)  
The date each file was created is supplied at CALL time, when the job is run.
- 090 FILE NAME — WKLYTR (P/S)  
The output file is called WKLYTR and put on PACK04 on unit R1.
- 094 RECORDS — 500 (P/S)  
Our output file contains up to 500 records.
- 096 RETAIN — P (ENTER-)  
We want to make this a permanent file. The ENTER- key caused DATE to be skipped and FILE NAME prompted.
- 100 FILE NAME — (P/S)  
We are finished with file statements, prompt MODIFY.
- RUN — Put the procedure in the source library.

**SAMPLE JOB 6. MULTI-FILE CALL**

We are going to run the procedure we built in sample job 5. However, this week Thursday was a holiday so there are only four input files. We can still use the same procedure if we delete an input file at MODIFY time.

```

READY-
000 CALL          NAME-          CALL (P/S)
001              UNIT-          WTR (P/S)
001              UNIT-          F1 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-WKYRUN
011              UNIT-F1
020 SWITCH          -11111XXX
030 FILE          NAME-MONTR
031              UNIT-F1
032              PACK-PACK08
033              DATE-          4/5/71 (P/S)
040 FILE          NAME-TUETR
041              UNIT-F1
042              PACK-PACK08
043              DATE-          4/6/71 (P/S)
050 FILE          NAME-WEDTR
051              UNIT-F1
052              PACK-PACK08
053              DATE-          4/7/71 (P/S)
060 FILE          NAME-THUTR
061              UNIT-F1
062              PACK-PACK08
063              DATE-          4/8/71 (P/S)
070 FILE          NAME-FRITR
071              UNIT-F1
072              PACK-PACK08
073              DATE-          4/9/71 (P/S)
080 FILE          NAME-WKLYTR
081              UNIT-R1
082              PACK-PACK04
083              RECORDS-500
084              RETAIN-F

```

\*\*\*\*\*  
MODIFY

```

020 (P/S)          11101XXX (P/S)

060, (P/S)

* THURSDAYS FILE NOT USED BECAUSE OF HOLIDAY, NO RUN THAT DAY (P/S)

```

RUN (P/S)  
**Explanation**

- 033 DATE — 4/5/71
- 043 DATE — 4/6/71
- 053 DATE — 4/7/71
- 063 DATE — 4/8/71
- 073 DATE — 4/9/71  
We must supply the date for each day's input file because we gave a delayed response (?) at BUILD time. Thursday's date is entered even though we will delete the file later. A date should be entered to continue the cycle.
- MODIFY 020 — We set off switch four to indicate Thursday's file is missing.
- MODIFY 060 — We delete the entire file for Thursday and enter a comment to explain why.
- RUN — Start the job.

## SAMPLE JOB 7. UPDATE MULTI-VOLUME MASTER FILE

Every Monday the XYZ Novelty Company prepares customer invoices, updates their customer master file, and updates their inventory file. Because the company has a huge customer file they've had to put the file on two disks: customer names beginning with A-L on one disk and the remaining customer names on a second disk. When he created this multi-volume master file, XYZ's programmer assigned the following identifying information:

1. A-L customer names:  
FILE NAME – CMASTER  
PACK – VOL01
2. M-Z customer names:  
FILE NAME – CMASTER  
PACK – VOL02

Because the company often needs information on individual customers, the programmer designed the customer master file as a direct file. The program to update the customer master file is CMUPDA. Here are the OCL statements for the job.

```

READY--                                LOAD (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME--                CMUPDA (P/S)
011              UNIT--                 F1 (P/S)
020 DATE (12/08/70) -                 (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -                (P/S)
040 FILE          NAME--                CMASTER (P/S)
041              UNIT--                 'F1 (P/S)
              -                         R1' (P/S)
042              PACK--                 'VOL01 (P/S)
              -                         VOL02' (ENTER-)
050 FILE          NAME--                (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

```

### Explanation

- 041 UNIT – 'F1  
R1'  
The single quotation marks tell the system the file CMASTER is a multi-volume file. F1, R1 tells the system the file is split between the fixed and removable disks on drive one.
- 042 PACK – 'VOL01  
VOL02'  
The single quotation marks tell the system the file is on more than one disk pack. VOL01, VOL02 tells the system the name of the disk packs containing the file. Pressing the ENTER— key causes the system to bypass the rest of the file keywords and prompt FILE NAME.
- 050 FILE NAME – Pressing the PROG START key causes the system to bypass all the file keywords and prompt MODIFY.



**SAMPLE JOB 8. CREATE A MULTI-VOLUME INDEXED FILE**

We are creating an inventory file. The file is very large and requires five packs. It is an indexed file with a 15 position keyfield; the keyfield consists of part number and warehouse location. The file is divided among the five volumes as follows:

Volume I01	Keyfields	000-000-000W1B1	to	175-200-233W1B2
I02		175-200-233W1B3	to	380-456-280W3R6
I03		380-456-287W7B3	to	629-384-300W3F6
I04		629-384-301W7B6	to	949-475-849W8F8
I05		949-476-836W4F8	to	999-999-999W9F9

The processing starts with I01 on unit R1 and I02 on unit R2. After processing I01, the program processes I02 allowing the operator to remove I01 and mount I03 on unit R1. Likewise, I04 replaces I02 and I05 replaces I03.

```

READY-                                LOAD (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-                CRTINV (P/S)
011              UNIT-                F1 (P/S)
020 DATE (12/31/70) -                (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -              (P/S)
040 FILE          NAME-                INVMSTR (ENTER-)
              KEY LENGTH-            15 (P/S)
04A             HIKEY-                '175-200-233W1B2 (P/S)
04B             HIKEY-                380-456-280W3R6 (P/S)
04C             HIKEY-                629-384-300W3F6 (P/S)
04D             HIKEY-                949-475-849W8F8 (P/S)
04E             HIKEY-                999-999-999W9F9' (P/S)
041              UNIT-                'R1 (P/S)
              -                       R2' (P/S)
042              PACK-                'VOLIO1 (P/S)
              -                       VOLIO2 (P/S)
              -                       VOLIO3 (P/S)
              -                       VOLIO4 (P/S)
              -                       VOLIO5' (P/S)
043              LABEL-               (P/S)
044              RECORDS-              (P/S)
045              TRACKS-               '100 (P/S)
              -                       193 (P/S)
              -                       150 (P/S)
              -                       193 (P/S)
              -                       80' (P/S)
046              LOCATION-             '87 (P/S)
              -                       8 (P/S)
              -                       49 (P/S)
              -                       8 (P/S)
              -                       8' (P/S)
047              RETAIN-               P (ENTER-)
050 FILE          NAME-                (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

```

## Explanation

- **KEY LENGTH:** All characters except commas are allowed as part of the HIKEY. If apostrophes are used as part of the key, two apostrophes must be entered for each one in the key. The number of characters entered for HIKEYs must equal KEY LENGTH.  
  
No statement number is assigned KEY LENGTH. This keyword cannot be changed at MODIFY time.
- **045 TRACKS**  
**046 LOCATION** The file need not occupy the entire volume if the number of tracks and the starting location are given. You must be sure these areas are available because the system cannot check offline packs.

**SAMPLE JOB 9. MAINTAIN A MULTI-VOLUME INDEXED FILE WITH PACKED KEYS**

We are maintaining a multi-volume indexed file. The file occupies four volumes. The keyfield is 15 characters long in packed format. The keyfield takes eight bytes in the record. The file is divided as follows:

Volume P01	Keyfields	000 000 000 000 000 through 000 025 000 000 000
P02		000 025 000 000 001 through 000 050 000 000 000
P03		000 050 000 000 001 through 000 075 000 000 000
P04		000 075 000 000 001 through 000 100 000 000 000

The OCL required to use this file is as follows:

```

READY-                                LOAD (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD          NAME--              PAYROL (P/S)
011              UNIT--              F1 (P/S)
020 DATE (07/09/71) --              (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) --            (P/S)
040 FILE          NAME--              PAYROLL (ENTER-)
              KEY LENGTH--           08,F (P/S)
04A              HIKEY--              '0000250000000000 (P/S)
04B              HIKEY--              0000500000000000 (P/S)
04C              HIKEY--              0000750000000000 (P/S)
04D              HIKEY--              0001000000000000' (P/S)
041              UNIT--              'R1 (P/S)
              --                    R2' (P/S)
042              PACK--              'VOLP01 (P/S)
              --                    VOLP02 (P/S)
              --                    VOLP03 (P/S)
              --                    VOLP04' (P/S)
043              LABEL--             ACCOUNT (ENTER-)
050 FILE          NAME--              (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)
    
```

**SAMPLE JOB 10. INCLUDE UTILITY CONTROL STATEMENTS IN A PROCEDURE**

Sample job 1 showed an OCL LOAD cycle for initializing the removable disk on drive one. This sample job shows how to do the same job using BUILD and CALL cycles and including the Utility Control Statements in the procedure.

```

READY-                                BUILD (P/S)
000 BUILD                             NAME-    INITRI (P/S)
001                                  UNIT-    F1 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD                             NAME-    $INIT (P/S)
011                                  UNIT-    F1 (P/S)
020 DATE                               -        (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -                (P/S)
040 FILE                             NAME-    (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

INCLUDE (P/S)
*****
ENTER UTILITY CONTROL STATEMENTS
00

// UIN UNIT-R1,TYPE-PRIMARY (P/S)
01

// VOL PACK-12345 (P/S)
02

// END (P/S)
03

RUN (P/S)
*****
MODIFY
READY-                                CALL (P/S)
000 CALL                             NAME-    INITRI (P/S)
001                                  UNIT-    F1 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD                             NAME-$INIT
011                                  UNIT-F1
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)
*****
INCLUDED STATEMENTS
00 // UIN UNIT-R1,TYPE-PRIMARY
01 // VOL PACK-12345
02 // END
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

```

## SAMPLE JOB 11. CHAIN PROCEDURES

We're going to use the BUILD cycle to chain two procedures created with the BUILD cycle. First, we use the BUILD cycle to build procedures to use the Conversational Utilities (\$KSE and \$KDE).

After the chained procedure is built, the CALL cycle is used to run the chained procedures.

```

READY-
000 BUILD          NAME-          BUILD (P/S)
001                UNIT-          KSE (P/S)
                                F1 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD           NAME-          $KSE (P/S)
011                UNIT-          F1 (P/S)
020 DATE           -              (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -          (P/S)
040 FILE           NAME-          (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

```

```

READY-
000 BUILD          NAME-          BUILD (P/S)
001                UNIT-          KDE (P/S)
                                F1 (P/S)
*****
010 LOAD           NAME-          $KDE (P/S)
011                UNIT-          F1 (P/S)
020 DATE           -              (P/S)
030 SWITCH (00000000) -          (P/S)
040 FILE           NAME-          KDEFILE (P/S)
041                UNIT-          F1 (P/S)
042                PACK-          F1F1F1 (P/S)
043                LABEL-         DRIV2 (P/S)
044                RECORDS-        4 (P/S)
045                LOCATION-       (P/S)
046                RETAIN-         T (P/S)
047                DATE-           (P/S)
050 FILE           NAME-          (P/S)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

```

```

READY-
000 BUILD          NAME-          BUILD (P/S)
001                UNIT-          MASTER (P/S)
                                F1 (P/S)
*****
010 CALL           NAME-          KSE (P/S)
011                UNIT-          F1 (P/S)
020 CALL           NAME-          KDE (P/S)
021                UNIT-          F1 (ENTER-)
*****
MODIFY

RUN (P/S)

```

```

READY-
000 CALL           NAME-          CALL (P/S)
001                UNIT-          MASTER (P/S)
                                F1 (P/S)
000 CALL           NAME-KSE
001                UNIT-F1
*****
010 LOAD           NAME-$KSE
011                UNIT-F1
*****
FORMAT DESCRIPTION ?          YES (P/S)
FORMAT TYPE -                 KDE (P/S)

```

NEW SOURCE MODULE ? YES (P/S)  
 SOURCE MODULE NAME - KDEFOR (P/S)  
 SOURCE MODULE UNIT - F1 (P/S)  
 06672 NEW STATEMENTS MAY BE ADDED TO SOURCE ENTRY  
 00000 H01 096 (P/S)  
 00010 A005 (P/S)  
 00020 A091 (P/S)  
 00030 H02 (COMMAND KEY 06 PRESSED)  
 END OF JOB ? YES (P/S)  
 KSE END OF JOB

000 CALL NAME-KDE  
 001 UNIT-F1  
 \*\*\*\*\*  
 010 LOAD NAME-\$KDE  
 011 UNIT-F1  
 020 FILE NAME-KDEFILE  
 021 UNIT-F1  
 022 PACK-F1F1F1  
 023 LABEL-DRIV2  
 024 RECORDS-4  
 025 RETAIN-T  
 \*\*\*\*\*

FORMAT NAME - KDEFOR (P/S)  
 FORMAT UNIT - F1 (P/S)  
 DISPLAY FORMATS ? YES (P/S)  
 H01096  
 A005  
 A091  
 NEW KDE FILE ? YES (P/S)  
 KEY FIELD START - NO (P/S)  
 SELECT FORMAT NUMBER - 01 (P/S)  
 \* \*

00000 THIS IS AN EXAMPLE OF CHAIN PROCEDURE ON THE MODEL 6 (P/S)  
 00010 KSE WAS THE FIRST JOB EXECUTED AND KDE WAS THE SECOND AND LAST JOB (P/S)  
 00020 THE CHAIN WAS INITIATED BY CALLING MASTER, WHICH WAS BUILT IN A BUILIC CYCLE (P/S)  
 00030 (COMMAND KEY 06 PRESSED)

\*\*\*\*\*

BATCH ACCUMULATORS	00	01	02	03	04
	0	0	0	0	0
	05	06	07	08	09
	0	0	0	0	0
FINAL ACCUMULATORS	00	01	02	03	04
	0	0	0	0	0
	05	06	07	08	09
	0	0	0	0	0

\*\*\*\*\*

END OF JOB ? YES (P/S)  
 KDE END OF JOB

**PART II  
DISK UTILITY PROGRAMS**

## Introduction to Disk Utility Programs

Every method of data processing requires a certain amount of maintenance work to keep it in good running order. For example, you must make back-up copies of important files, and remove out-of-date files. The Disk Utility programs are a collection of maintenance programs to serve your data-processing system. The Disk Utility programs are:

Disk Initialization  
 Alternate Track Assignment  
 Alternate Track Rebuild  
 File and Volume Label Display  
 File Delete  
 Copy/Dump  
 Library Maintenance

You might use one of the preceding utility programs to:

- Prepare disks for use.
- Replace defective tracks.
- Replace incorrect data on a track.
- Print VTOC (volume table of contents) information.
- Delete files from a disk.
- Copy or print files.
- Maintain system libraries.

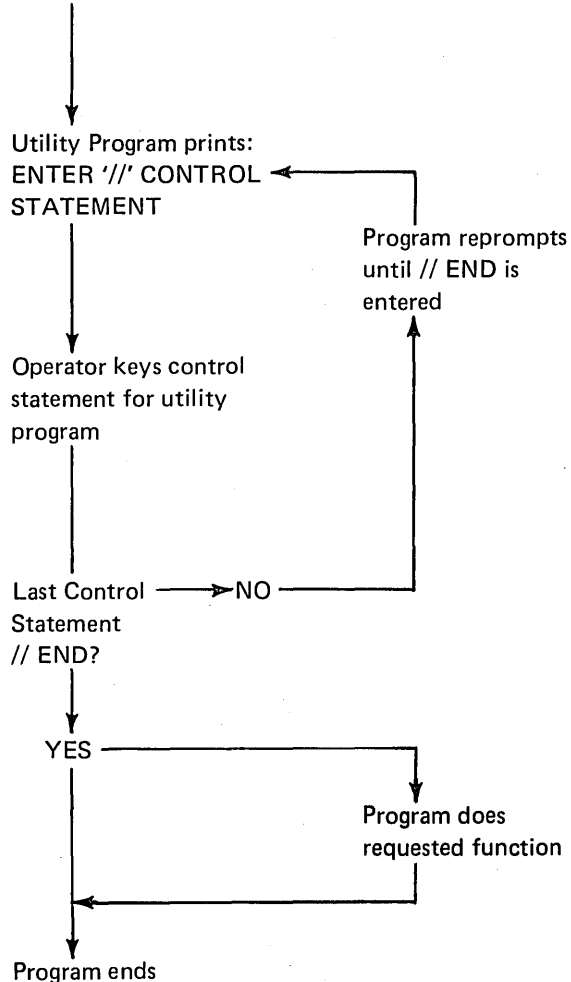
### GENERAL PROGRAM OPERATION

The utility programs require control statements describing the jobs you want done. They read these statements from the system input device, or from procedures stored in a source library on disk. The system input device is normally the keyboard, but the operator can specify another device by his response to the OCL keyword READER during initial program loading (IPL).

The following diagrams outline the general way the utility programs operate. Assume that the programs are reading control statements from the keyboard.

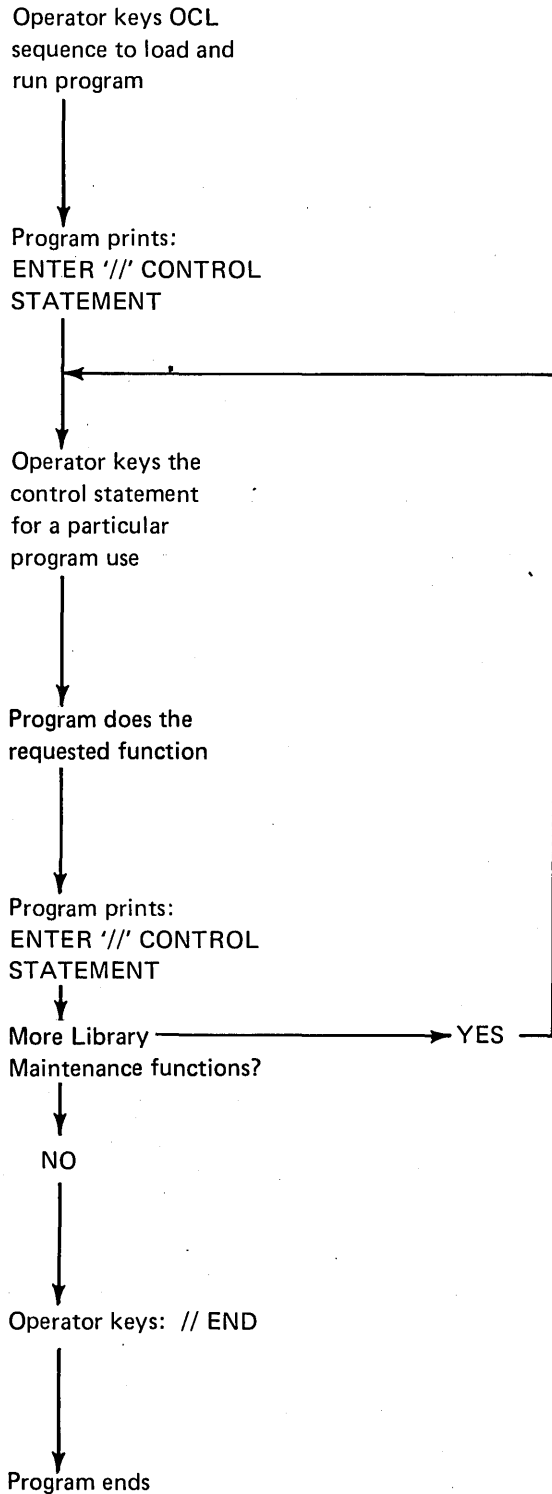
### All Programs Except Library Maintenance

Operator keys OCL sequence to load and run programs





## Library Maintenance Program



## USING DISK UTILITIES

To use utility programs, you must write utility control statements and operation control language (OCL) statements. In this manual, therefore, the information for every program is divided into five sections:

- Control statement summary
- Parameter summary
- Parameter descriptions
- OCL considerations
- Examples

The first three sections are to guide you in writing utility control statements. The OCL section is to guide you in writing OCL statements. The examples will help you in both.

### Control Statements

Every control statement is made up of an identifier and parameters. The identifier is a word that identifies the control statement. It is always the first word of the statement (following // blank in positions 1-3). Parameters are information you are supplying to the program. Every parameter consists of a keyword, which identifies the parameter, followed by the information you are supplying.

In writing the statements, use the manual in the following way:

1. Look at the **CONTROL STATEMENT SUMMARY** to determine which control statements and parameters apply to the program use you are interested in. (The program uses are stated in the text preceding the control statement summary.)
2. If you need information about the contents or meanings of particular parameters, look at the **PARAMETER SUMMARY**.
3. If you need more detailed information about parameters, read the **PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS** following the parameter summary.
4. If you need examples of specific jobs, look at the **EXAMPLE** section. All examples show the OCL and utility control statements needed to load and run the utility programs for specific jobs. The statements are shown in the form they are printed on the system printer.

## Coding Rules

The rules for writing control statements are as follows:

1. *//blank.* All control statements must have // blank in positions 1-3.
2. *Statement Identifier.* Begin in position 4 or after of the statement. Do not use blanks within the identifier.
3. *Blanks.* Use one or more blanks between the identifier and the first parameter. Do not use them anywhere else in the statement.
4. *Statement parameters.* Parameters can be in any order. Use a comma to separate one parameter from another. Use a hyphen (-) within each parameter to separate the keyword from the information you supply. Do not use blanks within or between parameters.
5. *Statement parameters containing a list of data after the keyword.* Use apostrophes (') to enclose the items in the list. Use a comma to separate one item from another. For example: UNIT-'R1,R2' (R1 and R2 are the items in the list).
6. *Statement length.* All control statements except Disk Initialization and Library Maintenance statements must not exceed 96 characters. The following Library Maintenance statements can be continued on another statement (see continuation rules for card OCL in Part 1 of this manual):

```
// ALLOCATE
// COPY (except COPY statements read from a file)
// DELETE
// MODIFY (not REMOVE, REPLACE, or INSERT
statements)
// RENAME
```

The Disk Initialization statement // VOL can also be continued.

The following example shows a control statement. The statement identifier is COPY. The parameter keywords are FROM, LIBRARY, NAME, and TO. The information you supply is F1, O, SYSTEM, and R1.

```
// COPY FROM-F1,LIBRARY-O,NAME-SYSTEM,TO-R1
```

## End-Control Statement

The END statement is a special control statement that indicates the end of control statements. It consists of the letters // END in positions 1-6 and must always be the last control statement for the programs.

## WRITING OCL STATEMENTS

To write OCL statements to run a utility program, look at the OCL CONSIDERATIONS section for that program. There you will find a list of the required keywords and responses for LOAD and BUILD sequences. (Keywords not listed can be bypassed.) Should you need more general information about OCL, or more specific information about the keywords, see Part I of this manual.

*Note:* Capitalized words and letters, numbers, and special characters have special meanings in OCL and utility control statement descriptions in this manual.

## Utility Control Statements

In utility control statements, capitalized words and letters must be written as they appear in the statement description. Sometimes numbers appear with the capitalized information. These numbers must also be written as shown.

Words or letters that are not capitalized mean you must use a value that applies to the job you are doing. The values you can use are listed in the parameter summaries for the control statements.

Braces and brackets ( { [ ] } ) sometimes appear in parameters shown in control statement summaries and parameter summaries. They are not part of the parameters. Braces indicate that you must choose one of several values to complete the parameter. For example, RETAIN  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} T \\ P \end{matrix} \right\}$  means you can use either RETAIN-T or RETAIN-P. Brackets indicate optional parameters. For example, [,TO-'key'] is an optional parameter that may or may not be used.

## OCL Statements

In OCL statements, keywords are capitalized. Responses that are shown in capital letters must be written as shown. If numbers or special characters are included with the capital letters, they must be written as part of the response. For example, \$INIT is the name of the Disk Initialization program and must be written exactly as shown. Responses that are not capitalized mean you must use the value that applies to the job you are doing.

## Disk Initialization Program (\$INIT)

Disks that are being used for the first time must be prepared for use. This process is called *initialization*. You can also use a disk that has been used before by reinitializing that disk (any data on the disk is destroyed). You use the Disk Initialization program to perform initialization.

### FUNCTIONS

Initializing a disk involves:

- Naming the disk.
- Writing track and sector addresses on the disk.
- Checking for defective tracks.
- Assigning alternate tracks to any defective tracks.

#### Naming a Disk

You must name every disk you intend to use. The operator uses this name to ensure that the correct disks are being used for a job. He supplies the disk name in either OCL statements or program control statements. The system checks this name against the name stored as identification on the disk pack. If the names don't match, a halt occurs and a message is printed to the operator. The operator may then change disks. All this must happen before a Model 6 program can use a disk.

#### Writing Track and Sector Addresses

A disk contains 200 or 400 tracks, each of which is divided into 24 sectors. An area at the beginning of every track and sector is set aside for an address. These addresses are necessary for locating data.

Track and sector addresses are not written on disks when the disks are manufactured. You must do this before you use the disks. The Disk Initialization program does it for you.

#### Checking for Defective Tracks (Surface Analysis)

The Disk Initialization program checks the condition of tracks. It does this by writing data on the tracks, then reading and checking the data to ensure it was recorded properly. If the check shows that the data is incorrect, the track on which the data was written is considered defective. This process is called *surface analysis*.

#### Assigning Alternate Tracks

If a defective track is found during surface analysis, an alternate track is assigned to it. The sole purpose of the alternate track is to act as a substitute for the defective track. Model 6 programs attempting to use the defective track will automatically use the alternate instead.

If either track 0 or 1 is defective, the program considers the disk unusable and stops initializing it. Tracks 0 and 1 are used only by the system and cannot have alternates assigned to them.

Every disk has six alternate tracks. Therefore, a maximum of six defective tracks may be assigned alternates on a disk. If there are more, the disk is considered unusable.

If tracks become defective after a disk is initialized, another program (Alternate Track Assignment) is used to assign alternate tracks. Disks need not be reinitialized to assign alternate tracks.

## OPTIONS

The Disk Initialization program allows you the following options:

- You may choose one of three types of initialization: primary, secondary, or clear.
- You may initialize up to three disks during the same program run.
- During primary initialization, you may decide whether to erase alternate track assignments already on the disk or leave them assigned.
- You may use up to ten characters, in addition to the disk name, to further identify a disk.
- You may specify the number of times you want the program to do surface analysis.

You specify the options you want in control statements (see *Control Statements* in this chapter).

### Type of Initialization

The program offers three types of initialization: primary, secondary, and clear. The type you choose determines the portion of the disk that will be initialized. The portions of a disk that can be initialized depend on the data-storage capacity of your disk drive.

Disk drives of differing storage capacities are available for your system. All drives use the same type of disks. The only difference is the number of tracks the drives can use. The larger the drive capacity, the more tracks the drive can use.

If you increase the capacity of your disk drives, more tracks on your disks become available for use. These additional tracks must be initialized before being used. The three types of initialization allow you the following options according to type.

- Primary or clear—initializing all tracks corresponding to the new capacity, including any that were previously initialized.
- Secondary—initializing only the additional tracks made available by the increased capacity.

### Primary Initialization

Primary initialization applies to new disks, or disks you have used but want to initialize again. The program initialized all tracks corresponding to the capacity of the drives on which the disks are mounted. Tracks that were previously initialized are initialized again. Any data on the tracks is destroyed.

You can use primary initialization on a disk as often as you want. However, the program will not initialize disks containing libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files. You must delete data files with the File Delete Program and libraries with the allocate function of the Library Maintenance Program.

### Secondary Initialization

Secondary initialization applies to disks that were initialized on drives of less capacity than drives you are now using. When you increase the capacity of your drives, more tracks on your disks become available for use. You must initialize the additional tracks. Use secondary initialization if you do not want information destroyed on tracks already in use. The program initializes the additional tracks only. Tracks already in use are not disturbed.

The program will not do secondary initialization on new disks or disks that have already been initialized to the capacity of the drives on which they are mounted.

### Clear Initialization

Clear initialization applies to new disks or disks previously used that require reinitialization due to invalid pack labels or an unrecoverable disk error. All tracks corresponding to the capacity of the drives on which the disks are mounted are initialized. Tracks that were previously initialized are reinitialized.

### CAUTION

All libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files are completely wiped out.

## Number of Disks

The Disk Initialization program can initialize a maximum of three disks during one program run. The type of initialization you specify for a program run applies to all disks being initialized during that run. The disks, however, must be mounted at the same time. You can't, for example, initialize more than one removable disk on a given drive during the same program run.

## Erasing Alternate Track Assignments

You can use primary or clear initialization to reinitialize disks that have been used. However, alternate track assignments could exist on such disks. The primary initialization function of the Disk Initialization program, therefore, gives you the option of:

- Erasing existing alternate track assignments and checking the condition of all tracks.
- Leaving existing alternate track assignments and checking only those tracks to which alternates are not assigned.

The option you choose applies to all disks being initialized during the program run.

## Additional Disk Identification

When you name a disk during primary or clear initialization, you can use up to ten characters, in addition to the disk name, to further identify the disk. The additional identification is strictly for your use. It is not used by the checking programs to ensure that the right disks are being used.

If you use the File and Volume Label Display program to print VTOC (volume table of contents) information from a disk, the additional identification is printed with the disk name.

## Surface Analysis Option

You can tell the Disk Initialization program to perform surface analysis from 1 to 255 times before judging whether or not tracks are defective. A track must successfully complete every check before being judged usable. If incorrect data is detected during surface analysis, the track on which the data was written is judged defective and an alternate is assigned to it.

The number of times you specify surface analysis to be performed applies to all disks being initialized during the program run. The time required for initialization is increased if you request surface analysis to be performed more than once.

## CONTROL STATEMENTS

You must supply the following control statements to specify the program options you want:

1. *UIN statement*—indicates the type of initialization, the number of disks being initialized, the number of times you want surface analysis performed, and whether or not you want previous alternate track assignments erased. One UIN statement is required per program run.
2. *VOL statement*—indicates the name you assign to the disk, plus any additional identification you want to give the disk. The VOL statement applies to primary and clear initialization only. One is required for every disk you initialize. Continuation statements are permitted.
3. *END statement*—indicates the end of control statements.

## Control Statement Summary

Type of Initialization	Control Statements <b>1</b>
------------------------	-----------------------------

### Primary

New Disks

```

{ // UIN TYPE-PRIMARY,UNIT- {code } ,VERIFY-number,CAP- {HALF }
  'codes' } {FULL }
{ // VOL PACK-name,ID-characters
{ // END
  
```

Disk already in use (reinitialize)

```

{ // UIN TYPE-PRIMARY,UNIT- {code } ,VERIFY-number,ERASE- {NO } ,CAP- {HALF }
  'codes' } {YES } {FULL }
{ // VOL PACK-name,ID-characters,OLDPACK-name
{ // END
  
```

### Secondary **3**

Disk already in use

```

{ // UIN TYPE-SECONDARY,UNIT- {code } ,VERIFY-number
  'codes' }
{ // END
  
```

Clear **2**

```

{ // UIN TYPE-CLEAR,UNIT- {code } ,VERIFY-number,CAP- {HALF }
  'codes' } {FULL }
{ // VOL PACK-name,ID-characters,OLDPACK-name
{ // END
  
```

- 1** Control statements are required in the order they are listed: UIN, VOL, END or UIN, END.
- 2** For primary and clear initialization, one VOL statement is required for each disk listed in the UNIT parameter of the UIN statement. The PACK parameter in the first VOL statement applies to the first disk listed in the UNIT parameter. The PACK parameter in the second VOL statement applies to the second disk listed in the UNIT parameter, and so on.
- 3** VOL statements are not required for secondary initialization because the disks are already named.

## Parameter Summary

### UIN (Input Definition) Statement

TYPE-PRIMARY	Primary initialization. Initialize the disks to the capacity of the drives on which they are mounted. Tracks already initialized are re-initialized. The program will not initialize disks containing libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files.	
TYPE-SECONDARY	Secondary initialization. Applies only to disks that were initialized on drives of less capacity than the drives you are now using. It means initialize the uninitialized portions of the disks to the capacity of the drives on which the disks are mounted. Tracks already initialized are not disturbed.	
TYPE-CLEAR	Clear initialization. Initialize the disks to the capacity of the drives on which they are mounted. Tracks already initialized are re-initialized. Active files and library checking is bypassed and any data on the tracks is destroyed.	
UNIT-code	Disk location (one disk).	Possible codes:
UNIT-'code,code'	Disk location (two disks).	R1, F1, R2, F2
UNIT-'code,code,code'	Disk location (three disks).	
VERIFY-number	Do surface analysis the number of times indicated (number can be 1-255). VERIFY-1 is assumed if you omit the parameter.	
ERASE-YES	Retest defective tracks.	Primary initialization only. ERASE-NO is assumed if you omit the parameter.
ERASE-NO	Do not retest defective tracks.	
CAP-HALF	Initialize a disk to half capacity even if on a full capacity drive.	The CAP Keyword forces ERASE-YES. Pack is initialized to capacity of the drive if this keyword is omitted.
CAP-FULL	Initialize a disk to full capacity.	

### VOL (Volume) Statement

PACK-name	Disk name. Can contain any of the standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas. Its length must not exceed six characters.	
ID-characters	Additional identification. Can contain any of the standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas. Its length must not exceed ten characters. If you omit this parameter no additional identification is written on the disk.	
OLDPACK-name	Current disk name of the disk to be initialized. See PACK Keyword (above) for valid responses.	

## PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

### TYPE Parameter (UIN)

The TYPE parameter indicates the type of initialization you want the program to do: primary, secondary, or clear. The type of initialization and the capacity of the disk drives on which the disks are mounted determine which disk tracks will be initialized. If this parameter is omitted, primary is assumed.

### UNIT Parameter (UIN)

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) tells the location of the disks you want to initialize. The program can initialize up to three disks during one program run.

The form of the UNIT parameter depends on the number of disks you are initializing:

1. For one disk, use UNIT-code
2. For two disks, use UNIT-'code,code'
3. For three disks, use UNIT-'code,code,code'

The codes indicate the locations of the disks:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

For primary and clear initialization, the order of codes must correspond to the order of VOL control statements. If, for example, you had used the parameter UNIT-'R1,R2', the first VOL statement applies to the removable disk on drive 1 and the second VOL statement to the removable disk on drive 2. (No VOL statements are required for secondary initialization. The disk is already named.)

### VERIFY Parameter (UIN)

The VERIFY parameter (VERIFY-number) concerns surface analysis. It enables you to indicate the number of times you want the program to do surface analysis before judging whether or not tracks are defective. The number can be from 1-255. If this parameter is omitted, VERIFY-1 is assumed.

### ERASE Parameter (UIN)

The ERASE parameter concerns alternate track assignment. It applies only to disks that have already been initialized and used, but you are reinitializing using primary initialization.

The condition of tracks on such disks has been tested at least once before (during the previous initialization) and tracks that were found to be defective during surface analysis were assigned alternates. The ERASE parameter, therefore, enables you to indicate whether you want the program to (1) retest the tracks to which alternate tracks are already assigned or (2) leave the alternate tracks assigned without retesting the tracks.

The parameter ERASE-YES means to retest. If you tell the program to retest, it erases any existing alternate track assignments, and tests all tracks as though the disk were new.

The parameter ERASE-NO means not to retest. If you tell the program not to retest, it tests only those tracks to which no alternate tracks are assigned. Alternate tracks previously assigned remain assigned.

### CAP Parameter

The CAP parameter determines the size of the pack when it is initialized. The CAP-HALF parameter means to initialize the pack to half capacity even if it is on a full capacity drive. The CAP-FULL parameter means to initialize the pack to full capacity. CAP-FULL should not be used on a half capacity system. The use of the CAP keyword forces ERASE-YES.

### *Disk Drive Capacity*

Disk drives of different data-storage capacities are available for System/3 Model 6. All drives use the same type of disks. The only difference is the number of tracks the drives can use: the larger the drive capacity, the more tracks the drive can use. However, you must initialize the disk tracks before using them.



### **PACK Parameter (VOL)**

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) applies to primary and clear initialization only. During primary and clear initialization, the Disk Initialization program writes a name on each disk. It uses the name you supply in the corresponding PACK parameter. (One VOL control statement containing a PACK parameter is required for each disk.)

The name can be any combination of standard System/3 characters except apostrophes ('), leading or embedded blanks and embedded commas (due to their delimiter function) (see Appendix A). Its length must not exceed six characters. The following are valid disk names: 0, F0001, 012, A1B9, ABC.

In general, disk names are used for checking purposes. Before a program uses a disk, the disk name is compared with a name you supply (either in OCL statements or control statements required by the program). If the names do not match, a message to the operator is printed. In this way, programs cannot use the wrong disks without the operator knowing about it.

### **ID (Identification) Parameter (VOL)**

The ID parameter (ID-characters) applies to primary and clear initialization only. It enables you to include up to ten characters, in addition to the disk name, to further identify a disk. The information is strictly for your use. (It is not used for checking purposes by the system.) If you use the File and Volume Label Display program to print the disk name, it will also print the additional identification for you.

The additional identification can be any combination of standard System/3 characters except apostrophes ('), leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas (due to their delimiter function). However, the maximum number is ten.

### **OLDPACK Parameter (VOL)**

The OLDPACK parameter (OLDPACK-name) is used to verify that a specific disk is mounted before initialization is started. If the name of the disk mounted does not match the name you specify, the program halts.

The name specified can be any combination of standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas. Its length must not exceed six characters.

## OCL CONSIDERATIONS

### LOAD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$INIT	Name of Disk Initialization program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Disk Initialization program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

### BUILD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	Procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$INIT	Name of Disk Initialization program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Disk Initialization program.
MODIFY	INCLUDE utility control statements <b>OR</b> RUN RUN	Response when including control statements in procedure.  Response when not including control statements in procedure.

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

**EXAMPLE**

**Primary Initialization of Two Disks**

*Statements*

```

READY - LOAD
*****
010 LOAD NAME - $INIT
011 UNIT - F1
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX) -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE NAME -
*****
MODIFY

```

```

LOAD
$INIT
F1

```

**OCL LOAD Sequence.**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER— after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILE NAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

RUN

```

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// UIN UNIT-'F2,R2',TYPE-PRIMARY
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// VOL PACK-2222
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// VOL PACK-PAYROL,ID-010270
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END

```

} Message printed by Disk Initialization program.

} Control statement supplied by operator.

} Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

*Explanation*

- Disk Initialization program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The two disks on drive 2 are being initialized (UNIT-'F2, R2' in UIN statement).
- The fixed disk (F2) will be given the name 2222 (PACK-2222 in first VOL statement).
- The removable disk (R2) will be given the name PAYROL (PACK-PAYROL in second VOL statement). Additional identifying information, 010270, will be written on the removable disk (ID-010270).

## MESSAGES FOR DISK INITIALIZATION

Message	Meaning
INITIALIZATION ON XX COMPLETE	This message is printed when initialization of a disk is complete. XX indicates the unit (R1, R2, F1, or F2) on which the initialization is complete.
INITIALIZATION ON XX TERMINATED	<p>This message is printed when initialization of a disk must be terminated for one of the following reasons:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Cylinder zero is defective.</li><li>2. More than six tracks are defective.</li><li>3. Possible disk hardware error exists.</li><li>4. The program attempted to initialize the disk ten times without success.</li></ol> <p>After this message is printed, halt A13 will occur. XX indicates the unit (R1, R2, F1, or F2) on which the initialization is terminated.</p>
**ALTERNATE TRACKS ASSIGNED**	These two messages are printed when a primary track is defective and an alternate track is assigned to it.
PRIMARY TRACK XXX ALTERNATE TRACK XXX	XXX indicates the tracks involved.
UNRECOVERABLE ERROR; RE-INITIALIZING PACK	This message is printed when the Disk Initialization program determines that the disk has not been initialized properly. The program will again attempt to initialize the disk correctly with ERASE-YES forced. The maximum number of times that the program will attempt to initialize a disk is ten. After that number of times, halt A13 occurs.

## Alternate Track Assignment Program (\$ALT)

Sometimes a disk track causes a reading or writing error during a job and an alternate track must be assigned to replace the defective track. The process of assigning an alternate track is performed by the Alternate Track Assignment program.

### FUNCTIONS

The process of assigning an alternate track consists of:

- Writing track addresses on disk.
- Checking for defective tracks.
- Printing all track sectors that contain incorrect data.
- Assigning an alternate track.

#### Writing Track Addresses

Any time a track causes reading or writing errors during a job, the system stops the program currently in operation and writes the track address in a special area on the disk. All disks contain such an area. The program can then locate a track by using the addresses stored in this area. As long as there are alternate tracks available for use, assignment can be done for all the tracks identified in this area.

#### Checking For Defective Tracks

The Alternate Track Assignment program uses a procedure called *surface analysis* to test the condition of tracks. Surface analysis consists of writing test data on a track, then reading the data to ensure it was written properly.

Before doing surface analysis, the Alternate Track Assignment program transfers any data from the track to an alternate track. This is the alternate that will be assigned if the track proves to be defective.

In judging whether or not the track is defective, the program does surface analysis the number of times you specify in the VERIFY parameter. If you omit the parameter, the program does surface analysis once. If the track causes reading or writing errors any time during surface analysis, the program considers the track defective.

#### Printing Sectors Containing Incorrect Data

If a track is defective, some of the data transferred to the alternate track could be incorrect. Therefore, when reading data from the defective track, the program logs all track sectors containing data that caused reading errors. For a hard-copy printout, the printer must be assigned as the logging device. Characters that have no print symbol are printed as two-digit hexadecimal numbers. The following is an example:

```
ABCDE GH123 45...
      B      A
      6      5
```

Appendix A lists the characters in the standard character set and their corresponding hexadecimal numbers.

To correct errors on the alternate track, use the Alternate Track Rebuild program.

#### Assigning An Alternate Track

An alternate track is assigned if a track is defective. When the program assigns an alternate, it transfers the contents of the defective track to the alternate. The alternate track is then automatically used any time the program attempts to use the defective track.

There are six alternate tracks. The program will not do conditional assignment if all six are already in use. An alternate track can replace any track except 0 and 1 (which are reserved for system use) and 2 through 7 (which are the alternate tracks).

## OPTIONS

The Alternate Track Assignment program gives you the following options:

- You may choose one of three types of assignment—conditional, unconditional, or cancel prior.
- You may use up to six alternate tracks on every disk.
- You may specify the number of times you want the program to do surface analysis.

You specify the options you want in control statements (see *Control Statements* in this chapter).

### Type of Assignment

The program offers three types of assignment: conditional, unconditional, and cancel prior. The three types of assignment allow you the following options according to type.

- Conditional—testing the condition of a track and assigning an alternate if it is defective.
- Unconditional—assuming a track is defective and assigning an alternate.
- Cancel prior—canceling an alternate track assignment.

### *Conditional Assignment*

Conditional Assignment consists of testing the condition of a track (surface analysis) and, if the track is defective, assigning an alternate track to replace it. It is the normal use of the Alternate Track Assignment program.

*Situation:* Conditional assignment applies to tracks that cause reading or writing errors during a job. Anytime a track causes such errors, the system does the following:

1. Stops the program currently in operation.
2. Writes the track address in a special area on the disk.

When you use the Alternate Track Assignment program to do conditional assignment, the program locates the tracks by using the addresses in the special area on disk. All disks, fixed and removable, have such an area. The program will do conditional assignment for all tracks identified in the area (one at a time), as long as there are alternate tracks available for assignment.

### *Unconditional Assignment*

You have used the Alternate Track Assignment program to do conditional assignment. The test on the track indicated that the track was not defective (an alternate, therefore, was not assigned). But the track still causes reading or writing errors, and you want to assign an alternate to it. For this reason you should assign an alternate track using unconditional assignment. Alternate tracks are assigned without first testing the condition of the tracks suspected of being defective. (A conditional assignment is forced after an unconditional request to check any other tracks that previously caused errors.)

### *Cancel Prior Assignment*

Cancel prior assignment is used when a defective track was found, but all alternates are in use. You want to free an alternate so you can recover the data from the defective track. Canceling an assignment involves transferring the data from an alternate track back to the track to which the alternate was assigned. Prior to transferring the data back to the original track, the Alternate Track Assignment program tests the condition of the original track. If the track is found defective, the program stops and one of three options is taken:

- You leave the assignment as it is but continue checking other assignments (if there are any), or the program ends.
- You cancel the assignment regardless of the condition of the original track. Before freeing the alternate, however, you would normally copy (to another disk) the file or library entry that uses the alternate. This saves the data that is already on the alternate.
- You test the track again.

You must run the File and Volume Label Display program to determine to what tracks alternates are assigned.

## Number of Alternate Tracks

There are six tracks on every disk that can be used as alternates. These tracks, in addition to tracks 0 and 1, can't be replaced; that is, they can't have an alternate assigned to them.

## Surface Analysis

You can tell the program to do surface analysis from 1 to 255 times before judging whether or not tracks are defective. A track is judged usable only after successfully completing every check. If at any time during surface analysis incorrect data is found, the track on which the data was written is judged defective, and an alternate is assigned to it.

## CONTROL STATEMENTS

You must supply the following control statements to specify the program options you want:

1. *ALT statement*—indicates the name and unit of the disk containing the defective track, the number of times you want surface analysis done, and the tracks to which you want to assign alternates or for which you wish to cancel assignment of an alternate track. There can be only 6 ALT statements per job.
2. *END statement*—indicates the end of control statements.

For each use, the program requires the statements in the order they are listed: ALT, END.

## Control Statement Summary

Use	Control Statements
Conditional Assignment	// ALT PACK-name, UNIT-code, VERIFY-number // END
Unconditional Assignment	// ALT PACK-name, UNIT-code, ASSIGN- $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{track} \\ \text{'tracks' } \end{array} \right\}$ , VERIFY-number // END
Cancel Prior Assignment	// ALT PACK-name, UNIT-code, UNASSIGN- $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{track} \\ \text{'tracks' } \end{array} \right\}$ , VERIFY-number // END

## Parameter Summary: ALT (Alternate) Statement

Parameter	Meaning
PACK-name	Name of the disk.
UNIT-code	Location of the disk. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2.
VERIFY-number	In testing the condition of a track, do surface analysis the number of times indicated (number can be 1-255). If VERIFY parameter is omitted, do surface analysis once.
ASSIGN-track	Assign an alternate (unconditionally) to one track. Use track numbers 8-405 to identify tracks.
ASSIGN-'track,track,...'	Assign one alternate (unconditionally) to each track (maximum is six).
UNASSIGN-track	Cancel one alternate track assignment. Use track numbers 8-405 to which alternates are assigned.
UNASSIGN-'track,track,...'	Cancel two or more alternate track assignments (maximum is six).

## PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

### PACK Parameter

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the disk containing the defective tracks. This is the name written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program.

The Alternate Track Assignment program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to ensure they match. In this way, the program ensures that it is using the right disk.

### UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) indicates the location of the disk containing defective tracks. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

### VERIFY Parameter

The VERIFY parameter (VERIFY-number) enables you to indicate the number of times you want the program to do surface analysis before judging whether or not the track is defective. The number can be from 1-255. If you omit the parameter, the program does surface analysis once.

### ASSIGN Parameter

The ASSIGN parameter (ASSIGN-track) applies to unconditional assignment. It tells the program which tracks you want alternates assigned to.

You can assign alternates to any tracks except 0-7.

The form of the ASSIGN parameter depends on the number of tracks you want to specify. For one track, use ASSIGN-track; for two tracks, use ASSIGN-'track,track'; and so on. You can specify up to six tracks.

Use the track numbers (8-405) to identify the tracks. For example, the parameter ASSIGN-'50, 301,353' causes the program to assign alternate tracks to tracks 50, 301, and 353.

### UNASSIGN Parameter

The UNASSIGN parameter (UNASSIGN-track) applies to cancelling alternate track assignments. It identifies tracks for which you want the program to cancel assignments.

You can cancel up to six assignments. The form of the UNASSIGN parameter depends on the number of assignments you want to cancel. For one assignment, use UNASSIGN-track; for two assignments, use UNASSIGN-'track,track'; and so on.

Use the track numbers (8-405) to identify the tracks. For example, the parameter UNASSIGN-'50,301,352' causes the program to cancel alternate-track assignments for tracks 50, 301, and 352.



## OCL CONSIDERATIONS

### LOAD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$ALT	Name of Alternate Track Assignment program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Alternate Track Assignment program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

### BUILD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$ALT	Name of Alternate Track Assignment program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Alternate Track Assignment program.
MODIFY	INCLUDE utility control statements OR RUN OR RUN	Response when including control statements in procedure.       Response when not including control statements in procedure.

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

**EXAMPLE**

**Conditional Assignment**

*Situation*

Assume that during a job the system printed a message telling the operator it found a defective track on the removable disk on drive 1. (The name of the disk is BILLNG.) Before doing more jobs, the operator wants to use the Alternate Track Assignment program to check the condition of the track and assign an alternate to the track if it is defective.

*Statements*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010   LOAD     NAME      - $ALT
011                UNIT  - F1
020   DATE     (XX/XX/XX) -
030   SWITCH   (00000000) -
040   FILE     NAME      -
*****
  
```

**OCL LOAD Sequence.**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER— after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILE NAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

MODIFY

**RUN**

```

ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT
// ALT PACK-BILLNG,UNIT-R1
-----
ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END
  
```

} Message printed by Alternate Track Assignment program.

} Control statement supplied by operator.

} System reprompts. END statement terminates sequence.

*Explanation*

- Alternate Track Assignment program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The name of the disk (BILLNG) and its location (removable disk on drive 1) are indicated by the PACK and UNIT parameters in the ALT statement.
- Because we omitted the VERIFY parameter from the ALT statement, the program does surface analysis once when it tests the condition of the track.

## MESSAGES FOR ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT

Message	Meaning
ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNED	This message is printed when an alternate track has been assigned to a defective track and the data has been transferred to the alternate track.
PRIMARY TRACK HAS BEEN TESTED OK	This message is printed when it is determined that a primary track is not defective.
TRACK xxx, UNIT zz	xxx is the primary track number and zz is the unit involved.
PRIMARY TRACK STILL DEFECTIVE	This message is printed when the Alternate Track Assignment program determines that the track is still defective.
DATA TRANSFERRED BACK TO PRIMARY TRACK	This message is printed when the data is transferred back to the primary track.
**SECTOR WITH DATA ERROR**	This message is printed when the Alternate Track Assignment program found an error when transferring data. The sector that has the error is printed out.
PRIMARY TRACK xxx ALTERNATE TRACK yyy, UNIT-zz	This message is printed after ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNED and DATA TRANSFERRED BACK TO PRIMARY TRACK. xxx is the primary track number, yyy is the alternate track number, and zz is the unit involved.

## Alternate Track Rebuild Program (\$BUILD)

An alternate track assigned by the Alternate Track Assignment program may contain some incorrect data. In order to correct this data, you must use the Alternate Track Rebuild program.

### FUNCTIONS

The process of correcting data consists of:

- Locating incorrect data.
- Replacing incorrect data.

#### Locating Incorrect Data

The Alternate Track Assignment program prints a listing of all track sectors that may contain incorrect data. You will find, on the listing, the name of the disk, the track and sector numbers of the area suspected of containing incorrect data, and the data from these sectors.

#### Control Statement Summary

##### Control Statement

```
// REBUILD PACK-name,UNIT-code,TRACK-location,LENGTH-
number,DISP-position
```

```
{
Substitute Data
}
```

```
// END
```

To replace characters 1-12 and 75-78 of a sector, you can use either of the following:

1. Use one REBUILD statement to replace all the characters with a LENGTH parameter of 78.
2. Use one REBUILD statement for every set of positions you correct.

The data you want to substitute must follow the REBUILD statements to which it applies. The order of the statements and data in the preceding example would be:

```
// REBUILD statement      for positions 1-78
data
// END
```

```
// REBUILD statement      for positions 1-12
data
// REBUILD statement      for positions 75-78
data
// END
```

#### Replacing Incorrect Data

The Alternate Track Rebuild program will replace the number of characters you indicate in the positions you indicate. You must key the new characters in hexadecimal form. These characters are called *substitute data*.

### OPTIONS

The Alternate Track Rebuild program gives you the following options:

- You may correct as many characters as you wish on one track.
- You may correct data on more than one track.

You specify the options you want in control statements (see *Control Statements* in this chapter).

#### Parameter and Substitute Data Summary

##### REBUILD Statement Meaning

PACK-name	Name of the disk.
UNIT-code	Location of the disk. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2.
TRACK-location	Number of track and sector containing incorrect data. Number is printed by Alternate Track Assignment program. Track number must be three digits; sector number must be two digits. (TRACK-01109 means track 11 sector 9).
LENGTH-number	Number of characters being replaced. Number can be 2-256 and must be a multiple of 2 (2, 4, 6, etc.).
DISP-position	Position of the first character being replaced in the sector. Position can be 1-255.

##### Substitute Data

Code each character in hexadecimal form. Follow every second character, except the last, with a comma. EXAMPLE: The numbers 123456 would be coded as F1F2,F3F4,F5F6. (Appendix A lists the hexadecimal codes for System/3 characters.)

### Number of Characters

You may replace from 2 to 256 characters on one track in one run. You can do this by replacing all the characters (including correct data) or just groups of incorrect data.

### Number of Tracks

The Alternate Track Assignment program prints the track and sector numbers for those areas that contain incorrect data. You can correct one or more of these tracks in one program run. The possible tracks you can correct are 8 through 405 and the sectors are 0 through 23. Tracks 0 through 7 can't be corrected.

## PARAMETER AND SUBSTITUTE DATA DESCRIPTIONS

### PACK Parameter

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the disk that contains the alternate track being corrected. This name is the one written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program.

The Alternate Track Rebuild program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to ensure they match. In this way, the program ensures that the program is using the right disk.

### UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) indicates the location of the disk that contains the alternate track being corrected. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Location
K1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

### TRACK Parameter

The TRACK parameter (TRACK-location) identifies the track and sector that contains the data being corrected. The defective track, not the alternate track, is the one you refer to. Referencing the defective track is the same as referencing the alternate track.

Use the track and sector numbers in the TRACK parameter. The possible track numbers are 008-405. Always use three digits. The possible sector numbers are 00-23. Always use two digits. The track number must precede the sector number. For example, the parameter TRACK-11019 means track 110, sector 19.

Track and sector numbers are printed by the Alternate Track Assignment program when it prints data from sectors that contain incorrect data.

### LENGTH Parameter

The LENGTH parameter (LENGTH-number) tells the program how many characters you are replacing in the sector. You must replace characters in multiples of 2 (2, 4, 6, and so on). The maximum is 256, which is the capacity of a sector.

Length applies to characters that occupy consecutive positions in the sector. If the characters you want to replace do not occupy consecutive positions, you must either replace more characters or use more than one REBUILD statement. For example, to replace characters 10-11 and 24-25 in a sector, you can do either of the following:

1. Use one REBUILD statement to replace characters 10-25 (LENGTH-16).
2. Use two REBUILD statements to replace characters 10-11 (LENGTH-2) and 24-25 (LENGTH-2).

### DISP (Displacement) Parameter

The DISP parameter (DISP-position) indicates the position of the first character being replaced in the sector. The position of the first character in the sector is 1; the position of the second character is 2; and so on. The maximum position is 255.

Beginning at the position you indicate, the Alternate Track Rebuild program replaces the number of characters you indicate in the LENGTH parameter.

### Substitute Data

After each REBUILD statement, you must key the substitute characters that apply to that statement. The characters must be in hexadecimal form. Appendix A shows the hexadecimal forms of the characters in the standard character set.

Include a comma after every second character. For example, the data F1F2,F3F4,F5F6 represents 123456. F1 is the hexadecimal form of 1; F2 is the hexadecimal form of 2; and so on.

Key only the number of characters you indicated in the LENGTH parameter in the REBUILD statement.

## OCL CONSIDERATIONS

### LOAD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$BUILD	Name of Alternate Track Rebuild program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Alternate Track Rebuild program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

### BUILD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1 or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$BUILD	Name of Alternate Track Rebuild program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Alternate Track Rebuild program.
MODIFY	RUN*	Response when not including control statements in procedure.

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

\*BUILD does not allow utility control statements in the procedure.

## EXAMPLE

### Correcting Characters on an Alternate Track

#### *Situation*

Assume that the Alternate Track Assignment program printed the following information:

**\*\*SECTOR WITH DATA ERROR\*\***

TRACK 05020

ABCDEF	GH1	34567890...	} (Assume the entire contents of the sector was printed.)
B	A		
6	5		

It means that errors were detected in sector 20 of track 50.

In checking the characters printed by the program, you found that the seventh and eleventh characters in the sector are incorrect and you want the operator to run the Alternate Track Rebuild program to correct them.

Statements

```

READY - LOAD
*****
010 LOAD NAME - $BUILD
011 UNIT - F1
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX) -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE NAME -
*****
MODIFY
RUN
    
```

OCL LOAD Sequence.

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER— after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILE NAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Alternate Track
// REBUILD PACK-BILLNG ,UNIT-R1 ,TRACK-05020 ,LENGTH-6 ,DISP-7 } Rebuild program.
ENTER HEX DATA STATEMENT } Message printed by Alternate Track
C6C7 ,C8F1 ,F2F3 } Rebuild program.
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Alternate Track
// END } Rebuild program.
    
```

Control statements and substitute data supplied by the operator

Explanation

- Alternate Track Rebuild program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The name of the removable disk (BILLNG) and its location (drive 1) are indicated in the PACK and UNIT parameters in the REBUILD statement.
- The sector containing the incorrect characters is sector 20 of the alternate track assigned to track 50 (TRACK-05020). The seventh character in the sector is the first character being replaced (DISP-7):
- The seventh through twelfth characters in sector 20 are being replaced (LENGTH-6). We included the twelfth character because the number of characters being replaced must be a multiple of 2. By also replacing the characters between the incorrect ones, we needed only one REBUILD statement.
- The substitute characters follow the REBUILD statement. They are F (C6), G (C7), H (C8), 1 (F1), 2 (F2), and 3 (F3).



## File and Volume Label Display Program (\$LABEL)

You may need to obtain specific information about a file; find space available for libraries or new files; or check the contents of a disk for libraries, scratch data files, temporary data files, or permanent data files. In order to do any of these, you need information contained in the volume table of contents (VTOC). To obtain this information you must use the File and Volume Label Display program.

### FUNCTIONS

This program allows you to:

- Print VTOC information.
- Print headings for file information.

#### Print VTOC Information

The VTOC is an area on disk that contains information about the contents of the disk. Every disk contains a VTOC. The File and Volume Label Display program allows you to print this information.

The printed VTOC information is a readable, up-to-date record of the contents of the disk. There can be any number of reasons why you might need the information. Some of the more common ones are as follows:

1. Before re-initializing a disk, you might want to check its contents to ensure that it contains no libraries, permanent data files, or temporary data files.
2. You want to find out what disk areas are available for libraries or new files.
3. You want specific file information, such as the file name, designation (permanent, temporary, scratch), or the space reserved for the file.

#### Print Headings

If the file information you requested from the VTOC overflows onto another page, the program prints the headings for the information at the top of the next page. It will do this for each succeeding new page.

### OPTIONS

The File and Volume Label Display program gives you the following options:

1. Print the entire Volume Table of Contents (VTOC) from a disk.
2. Print only the VTOC information for certain data files. You may specify up to 20 file names in one run.

In both cases, the program also prints the name of the disk.

#### Entire Contents of VTOC

There are many reasons why you may want to print the entire VTOC. You may want to check which tracks are assigned alternates or how many alternate tracks are still available for use. You may also want to check the boundaries of libraries or check for permanent, temporary, or scratch data files.

#### File Information Only

You may request information for specific files. You may want this information to find out file names, file designations, or disk areas reserved for files. You may also use it to determine the relationship of multivolume files.

#### Number of File Names

When you specify a file name, you must use the name that identifies the file in the VTOC. You are allowed to specify up to 20 file names in one program run.

### CONTROL STATEMENTS

You must supply the following control statements to specify the program options you want:

1. *DISPLAY statement* — indicates whether you want the entire VTOC or specific file information from the VTOC. It also indicates the unit of the disk containing VTOC information.
2. *END statement* — indicates the end of control statements.

## Control Statement Summary

Uses	Control Statement <sup>①</sup>
------	--------------------------------

Print entire VTOC: // DISPLAY UNIT-code,LABEL-VTOC  
// END

Print only file information from VTOC: // DISPLAY UNIT-code,LABEL- { filename } { 'filenames' }<sup>②</sup>  
// END

① For each use, the program requires the statements in the order they are listed: DISPLAY, END.

② The number of filenames you list for a program run may not exceed 20. (VTOC is considered as one filename.)

## Parameter Summary (Display Statement)

Parameter	Meaning
-----------	---------

UNIT-code Location of the disk containing the VTOC information being printed. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2.

LABEL-VTOC Print entire contents of VTOC.

LABEL-filename Print VTOC information for one file.

LABEL-'filename,filename,...' Print VTOC information for more than one file. The number of filenames you list for a program run may not exceed 20. (VTOC is considered as one filename.)

## PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

### UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) indicates the location of the disk containing the VTOC information being printed. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

## LABEL Parameter

The LABEL parameter indicates the information you wanted printed: the entire contents of the VTOC or only the information for certain files. The VTOC is an area on disk that contains information about the contents of the disk. Every disk, fixed and removable, contains a VTOC. An example of a VTOC printout is as follows:

```

PACK-111111          ID-ANDERSON
NO. OF ALTERNATE TRACKS AVAILABLE-2
TRACKS WITH ALTERNATE ASSIGNED-302,200
DEFECTIVE ALTERNATE TRACKS-3,5
DEVICE CAPACITY-400
LIBRARY EXTENT--  START  END  EXTENDED END
                  008   027   027
AVAILABLE SPACE ON PACK
LOCATION  TRACKS
  028   367
  399   001
  401   001
    
```

```

PACK-111111          UNIT-R1   DATE 11/11/70
FILE              FILE  KEEP FILE  REC  KEY  KEY  NEXT AVAIL  NEXT AVAIL  INDEX  DATA  VOL
NAME             DATE   TYPE TYPE  LEN  LEN  LOC  RECORD     KEY      START END  START END SEQ
COST             12/31/73  T    S    0128          405/11/129          405 405 00
MASTER          12/31/73  P    S    0128          404/11/129          404 404 00
EMPLOYEE        11/14/70   P    I    0128  05   0005  ****          402/01/129  402 402 403 403 02
UPDATE          11/15/70   T    I    0128  05   0005  396/11/129  395/00/185  395 395 396 396 00
PARTS           12/31/73  T    D    0128          ****          400 400 01
SERIAL          12/31/73  T    S    0128          398/11/129          398 398 00
ADDRESS         12/31/73  T    S    0080          397/06/065          397 397 00
BACKUP          12/31/73  S    S    0128          399/11/129          399 399 00
    
```

The meaning of the VTOC information is as follows:

Heading	Meaning
PACK-name	Name of the disk.
ID-characters	Additional disk identification (if any).
NUMBER OF ALTERNATE TRACKS AVAILABLE-number	Number of alternate tracks available for assignment.
TRACKS WITH ALTERNATE ASSIGNED	Numbers of primary tracks that have been assigned an alternate.
DEFECTIVE ALTERNATE TRACKS	Numbers of the alternate tracks that are defective.
DEVICE CAPACITY-number	Disk drive capacity (number of tracks).
LIBRARY EXTENT	Boundary of libraries on the disk. (If the disk contains no libraries, these headings are not printed.)
START	Track on which library begins. } If the disk contains both source and object library, START refers to beginning of source library and END refers to end of object library.
END	
EXTENDED END	Object library only. Track on which extension to library ends. When object library is full, temporary entries can be placed in space following end of library, provided that space is available.
AVAILABLE SPACE ON PACK	Available disk areas.
LOCATION	First track in available area.
TRACKS	Number of tracks available.
PACK-name	Name of the disk.
UNIT-code	Location of the disk containing the VTOC information.
DATE-xx/xx/xx	Current system date.
FILE NAME	Name that identifies file in VTOC.
FILE DATE	Date given the file when file was placed on disk.
KEEP TYPE	File designation: P = permanent T = temporary S = scratch
FILE TYPE	File type: I = indexed S = sequential D = direct B = BASIC file

Heading	Meaning
REC LEN	Number of characters in each record in file.
KEY LEN	Indexed files only. Number of characters in each record key.
KEY LOC	Indexed files only. Position in record occupied by last character of record key.
NEXT AVAIL RECORD	Beginning location of next available record in file. Location is track, sector, and position within sector. EXAMPLE: 099/18/006 = track 99, sector 18, position 6. If the first byte of the next available record occurs in the next track after the end track of DATA START END then this field will contain ****.
NEXT AVAIL KEY	Indexed files only. Beginning location of next available record key in index portion of file. Location is track, sector, and position within sector. EXAMPLE: 090/10/006 = track 90, sector 10, position 6. If the first byte of the next available key occurs in the next track after the end track of INDEX START END, then this field will contain ****.
INDEX START END	Indexed files only. Tracks on which index starts (START) and ends (END).
DATA START END	Disk area reserved for the file. START is the first track of the area. END is the last track. For indexed files, this refers to the data portion of the file.
VOL SEQ	VOL SEQ applies to multivolume files only. It indicates the order of this disk as it relates to the other disks containing the remaining portion of the file.

## OCL CONSIDERATIONS

### LOAD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$LABEL	Name of File and Volume Label Display program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing File and Volume Label Display program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

### BUILD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$LABEL	Name of File and Volume Label Display program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing File and Volume Label Display program.
MODIFY	INCLUDE utility control statements OR RUN OR RUN	Response when including control statements in procedure.  Response when not including control statements in procedure.

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

**EXAMPLE**

**Printing VTOC Information for Two Files**

*Statements*

```
READY - LOAD
*****
010 LOAD NAME - $LABEL
011 UNIT - F1
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX) -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE NAME -
*****
MODIFY
RUN
```

**OCL LOAD Sequence.**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER- after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILENAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words are not on the same line.

```
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// DISPLAY UNIT-R1,LABEL-'BILLNG,INVO1'
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// DISPLAY UNIT-F2,LABEL-VTOC
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END
```

} Message printed by File and Volume Label Display program.

} Control statement supplied by operator.

} Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

*Explanation*

- The File and Volume Label Display program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The files for which information is printed are named BILLNG and INVO1 (LABEL-'BILLNG,INVO1' in first DISPLAY statement). They are located on the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1).
- Information from the entire VTOC on F2 is printed.

## File Delete Program (\$DELETE)

You may find that you no longer need the information in a file. You can free the space in a file for use by new files by using the File Delete program.

The program may be used on temporary, scratch and permanent files. To delete permanent files, you must use the File Delete program. You can scratch temporary files by using the File Delete program or by changing the file designation from temporary to scratch (using the OCL keyword RETAIN) when you use the file.

### FUNCTIONS

This program allows you to:

- Eliminate file references in the VTOC.
- Erase information in a file.

### VTOC File References

The File Delete program allows you to remove the VTOC references to a file by removing the reference (SCRATCH statement). However, the file reference is not physically removed from the VTOC until normal end of job has occurred.

### Erase File Information

You may erase a file from the disk as well as removing the file reference in the VTOC (REMOVE statement). This may involve erasing the information contained in the file. Its space is then made available for any new files.

### OPTIONS

The File Delete program gives you the following options:

- You may choose to delete files in one of two ways: remove or scratch.
- You may delete some or all files from a disk.
- You may specify up to 40 file names in one job.

You specify the options you want in control statements (see *Control Statements* in this chapter).

### Deleting a File

If you wish to delete a permanent file, you must use the File Delete program. If you delete a temporary file, you may use either the File Delete program or change the file designation when you use the file. You may either remove or scratch a file. No file is physically scratched or removed from the VTOC until end of job has occurred.

### Removing a File

When you remove a file from a disk (REMOVE statement), you are removing the file reference from the VTOC. You may also erase the data in the file from the disk.

### Scratching a File

The File Delete program allows you to scratch a file if you find you may need to reference it later. The SCRATCH statement does not erase files from the disk. It changes their designation to scratch (S) in the Volume Table of Contents (VTOC). By doing this, the program makes the areas that contain the files available for other files or for system programs. You can use the file until a permanent file is created in its place or it is removed by a system program.

A halt will occur if an attempt is made to create a new multivolume file that will have the same label on disk as an existing single volume file, or an attempt is made to create a single volume file bearing the same label as an existing multivolume file. The halt will occur even though the existing file is a scratch file.

### Number of Files

You may remove some or all files on a disk. If a file name applies to more than one file, all the files with that name are deleted. You can keep this from happening by identifying the files with both name and date.



## Number of File Names

You may specify as many file names as the control statement will allow. If you specify more, you must use more than one statement. However, you are only allowed to specify 40 file names in one job.

## CONTROL STATEMENTS

1. *REMOVE statement*—indicates the name and unit of the disk, what files are to be removed, and whether or not you are erasing the data for the file.
2. *SCRATCH statement*—indicates the name and unit of the disk and what files you wish to scratch.
3. *END statement*—indicates the end of control statements.

## Control Statement Summary

Use	Control Statements	1
Scratch all files in the VTOC:	// SCRATCH PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL-VTOC // END	
Scratch only one file in the VTOC:	// SCRATCH PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL-filename, DATE-date // END	2
Scratch multiple files in the VTOC:	// SCRATCH PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL- { filename 'filenames' } // END	
Remove all files from disk:	// REMOVE PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL-VTOC, DATA- { NO or YES } // END	
Remove only the files named from disk:	// REMOVE PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL- { filename 'filenames' } , DATE-date, DATA- { NO or YES } // END	2

1 For each use, the program requires the statements in the order they are listed: SCRATCH, END, or REMOVE, END.

2 Use this form of the SCRATCH or REMOVE statement when two or more files have the same name and you want to delete one of them.

## Parameter Summary

Parameter	Meaning
PACK-name	Name of the disk.
UNIT-code	Location of the disk. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2.
LABEL-VTOC	Scratch or remove all files from the VTOC.
LABEL-filename	Scratch or remove only the file named in the VTOC.
LABEL-'filename,filename,...	Scratch or remove only the files named in the VTOC.
DATE-date	Date of the file being deleted. Date must be a 6-digit number. EXAMPLE: DATE-062070 means June 20, 1970.
DATA- { NO or YES }	Delete files from disk as well as VTOC.

Use names that identify files in VTOC. (These are the names you gave the files when you placed them on disk.)

## PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

### Pack Parameter

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the disk that contains the files being deleted. The name you supply in this parameter is the one written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program.

The File Delete program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to ensure they match. In this way, the program ensures that it is using the right disk.

### Unit Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) tells the program the location of the disk containing the files being deleted. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	*Fixed disk on drive 2.

### Label Parameter

The LABEL parameter identifies the files you want to delete from the disk. Its form depends on the files you are deleting:

Form	Files Deleted
LABEL-VTOC	All of them.
LABEL-filename	Only the file that is named. The name can apply to more than one file. If it does, all of those files are deleted unless you use a DATE parameter to identify a particular one.
LABEL-'filename,filename,...	Only the files that are named. A name can apply to more than one file. If it does, all of those files are deleted. (You can list as many filenames as the statement can hold; the statement length, however, is restricted to 96 characters. Additional REMOVE or SCRATCH statements may be used for additional filenames. The maximum number of files that can be deleted in one run is 40.)

### Date Parameter

The DATE parameter (DATE-date) applies to two or more files that have the same name. It tells the program the date of the one you want to delete.

Every file on disk has a date, which is given to the file at the time it is created. When two or more files have the same name, the dates are used to tell one file from another.

The date is a six-digit number: two digits for day, two for month, and two for year. Day, month, and year can be in one of two orders: (1) month, day, year and (2) day, month, year. For example 061870 and 180670 both mean June 18, 1970.

In the DATE parameter, be sure to specify day, month, and year in the same order as when you placed the file on disk.

### Data Parameter (REMOVE Statement Only)

The DATA parameter lets you delete the files specified directly from the disk as well as from the VTOC.

If YES is coded in this parameter then the file specified will be removed from the disk and any reference to it in the VTOC will be removed. In addition, a message will be printed on the system logging device for each file removed from the disk in this format:

```
'DATA REMOVED FOR FILE XXXXXX  
DATE 000000'
```

DATA-YES should be used only if file security is required. The time needed to remove the data is much greater than the time needed to remove the VTOC entry.

If NO is coded in this parameter, then the file specified will not be removed from the disk. However, any reference to it in the VTOC will be removed. If this parameter is not used, DATA-NO is assumed.

**OCL CONSIDERATIONS**

**LOAD Sequence**

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$DELET	Name of File Delete program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing File Delete program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

**BUILD Sequence**

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$DELET	Name of File Delete program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing File Delete program.
MODIFY	INCLUDE utility control statements OR RUN OR RUN	Response when including control statements in procedure.  Response when not including control statements in procedure.

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

**EXAMPLE**

**Deleting One of Several Files Having The Same Name**

*Situation*

Assume that three files on a removable disk have the same name: INV01. The dates of these files are 6/16/70, 8/18/70, and 11/15/70. You want to delete the 6/16/70 version.

*Statements*

```

READY                                - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME                        - $DELET
011                UNIT                - F1
020  DATE   (XX/XX/XX)                -
030  SWITCH (00000000)                -
040  FILE   NAME                      -
*****

MODIFY
RUN

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by File Delete program.
// SCRATCH PACK-00001,LABEL-INV01,UNIT-R1,DATE-061670 } Control statement
                                                         supplied by
                                                         operator.

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Sequence repeats until operator
// END                          enters END statement.

```

**OCL Load Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER— after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILE NAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

*Explanation*

- File Delete program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Disk that contains the file being deleted is named 00001 (PACK-00001 in SCRATCH statement).
- Because two other files have the name INV01, the date (061670) is needed to complete the identification of the file you want to delete (LABEL-INV01 and DATE-061670).
- The removable disk containing the file to be deleted is on drive 1 (UNIT-R1).

## Removing One File

### Situation

You want to remove a file named INV02 from the pack mounted on R1.

### Statements

```

READY                                - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME                       - $DELET
011                UNIT                - F1
020  DATE  (XX/XX/XX)                 -
030  SWITCH (00000000)                 -
040  FILE  NAME                       -
*****
MODIFY
RUN
  
```

### OCL Load Sequence.

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER— after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILE NAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

    ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by File Delete program.
// REMOVE PACK-00001,LABEL-INV02,UNIT-R1,DATA-YES } Control statement supplied
'DATA REMOVED FOR FILE INV02 DATE 000000' } Printed by File Delete.

    ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Sequence repeats until operator
// END                               enters END statement.
  
```

### Explanation

- File Delete program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Disk that contains the file being removed is named 00001 (PACK-00001 in REMOVE statement).
- The removable disk containing the file to be removed is on drive 1 (UNIT-R1).
- DATA-YES indicates that the file data as well as the file VTOC reference is to be removed.

You might need to check records in a file for errors. In order to do this you need to print a copy of the file. It is important to provide a reserve disk, diskette, or permanent data files in case something happens to the original disk, diskette, cards or files. You can *copy* the disk, diskette, cards, or file using the Copy/Dump program<sup>1</sup>.

## FUNCTIONS

Copying a disk or disk file involves:

- Identifying disk or file locations in OCL.
- Using a work area.

Copying diskette or card files involves:

- Identifying the device in the control statement.

Printing a file involves:

- Identifying the portion to be printed.
- Printing record key or relative record numbers.

### Disk or File Location

In order to copy a disk or file, you must specify the unit on which the disk or file is located and the unit to which it is to be copied. You can copy a file from one disk to another or from one area to another on the same disk.

### Using a Work Area

When you are copying a file from one removable disk to another removable disk but have only one disk drive (R1 and F1), you must use a work area on the fixed disk on drive one. The disk you copy from must be a removable disk. The data from the file you are copying is transferred to the work area on the fixed disk where it remains until another removable disk is mounted. This is the removable disk to which the data is copied.

If you are copying a file from one area on a removable disk to another area on the same disk you need not use a work area on the fixed disk.

---

<sup>1</sup>The Copy/Dump program can be called by either the name \$COPY or the name \$KCOPY.

### Identifying the Device

In order to copy a diskette or card file, you must identify the device and indicate if it is an input or output file on the control statement. You can copy all or part of a file.

### Copying a Portion of a File

You can copy all or part of a file.

### Printing a Portion of a File

You can print all or part of a file.

### Record Keys and Relative Record Numbers

For indexed files the Copy/Dump program will print each record key (used to access the record) followed by the contents of the record. The records are printed either in the order their keys appear in the index portion of the file or as they appear in the file itself. For sequential and direct files, a record is printed with its relative record number (used to access the record) preceding the record. The records are printed in the order they appear in the file.

## OPTIONS

The Copy/Dump program allows you the following options:

- Copy an entire disk or a file.
- Copy part of a file.
- Copy all or part of a data file from disk, diskette or cards to disk, diskette or cards.
- Print part or all of a file.
- Delete records from a file.
- Reorganize a file.

You specify the options you want in control statements (see *Control Statements* in this chapter).

### Copying and Printing

You can specify any of the following copy or print combinations:

- Copy an entire disk.
- Copy a data file.
- Copy a part of a data file.
- Copy and print a data file.
- Copy a data file, but print only part of the file.
- Copy and print only part of a file.
- Print an entire data file.
- Print only a part of a data file.

On a Model 6 with 8K of main storage, a halt may occur if all options on a COPYFILE are specified for files with large records (256-bytes). This halt (A234) occurs because not enough main storage is available. To avoid this halt, consider the following changes to the COPYFILE statement:

1. Specify OUTPUT-DISK instead of OUTPUT-BOTH.
2. Specify REORG-NO instead of REORG-YES.
3. Specify OMIT- instead of DELETE-.

### Copying Entire Disk

When copying a disk, Copy/Dump program transfers the contents of the disk to another disk. The contents of the two disks will be the same, except for the disk names and alternate track information, which may be different.

The disk you are copying can contain libraries or data files or both. The disk that is to contain the copy must not have libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files.

The program can copy the contents of the removable disk to another using one disk drive. The drive, however, must be drive 1. To do this, the program uses available space on the fixed disk on drive 1. It fills the available space with information from the disk you are copying. Then it prints a message telling the operator to mount the other removable disk (the one to contain the copy) on drive 1. After transferring the information from the fixed disk to the removable disk, the program prints another message telling the operator to remount the disk you are copying. The program repeats this procedure until all information has been transferred.

Until the contents of the disk are completely copied on the new disk, portions of the new disk are changed to prevent accidental usage of a partially filled disk. Therefore, if the copying process is stopped before it is completed, the pack is unusable. You can restart the copying process by reloading the copy program or you can restore the disk by reinitializing.

After a successful copy the copy program prints a message:

**COPYPACK IS COMPLETE**



### Copying Files

The Copy/Dump program can copy a file from disk, cards, or diskette to disk, cards, or diskette, or from one area to another on the same disk.

The program can copy a file from one removable disk to another using one disk drive. The drive, however, must be drive 1. (See *WORK Parameter* in this section for more information.)

Your responses to the OCL keywords prompted for the Copy/Dump program indicate (1) the name and location of the disk file being copied and (2) the name and location of the disk file being created. See *OCL Considerations* in this section.

*Note:* An OCL statement is not required for a card or diskette file. The COPYFILE control statement describes card or diskette files.

In copying a file, the program can omit records. (See *DELETE Parameter* in this section for more information.)

In copying an indexed file, the program can reorganize records in the data portion such that they are in the same order as their keys are listed in the index. (See *REORG Parameter* in this section for more information.)

### Printing Files

The program can print all or part of the data file. To print only part, the program needs a SELECT control statement. (See *SELECT KEY and PKY Parameters and SELECT RECORD Parameters* in this section.) If you do not use a SELECT statement, the entire file is printed.

If you use SELECT KEY (or PKY) or REORG-YES, records from indexed files are printed in the order their keys appear in the index portion of the file; otherwise, they are printed as they appear in the file. For each record, the program prints the record key followed by the contents of the record.

Records from sequential and direct files are printed in the order they appear in the file. For each record, the program prints the relative record number followed by the contents of the record.

The program uses as many lines as it needs to print the contents of a record. If OUTPUT- is specified, only printable characters are printed. If OUTPTX- is specified, all characters are printed with their 2-digit hexadecimal value. Appendix A lists the hexadecimal values for characters in the standard character set.

The following is an example of the way the program prints a 20-character record when OUTPUT- is specified:

```
ABCDE GHIJ12345
```

If OUTPTX- is specified, the same record would be printed:

```
ABCDE GHIJ12345  
CCCCBCCCDFFFFFF44444  
12345678911234500000
```

After printing the last record, the printer triple-spaces and prints the following message:

```
(number) RECORDS PRINTED
```

### Deleting Records

If you want to delete records from a file while copying or printing, you must indicate the type of record you want to omit. To do this, you must specify the position of the character in the records (maximum position 9999) and the identifying character (any of the standard System/3 character set except commas, apostrophes, and blanks). The records that are deleted are printed. When the records of a file are being printed, the deleted records are indicated.

### Reorganizing a File

When you are copying an indexed file you can reorganize it. The records in the data portion are put in the same order as their index keys leaving the original of the file you are copying unaffected. If you are both copying and printing an indexed file, you must specify reorganization.

## COPYING MULTIVOLUME FILES

When copying multivolume files, the first volume of the input file has to be online when the job is initiated.

### Maintaining Correct Date and Volume Sequence Numbers

To maintain the correct date and volume sequence numbers you must:

- Copy all the volumes of the file in one execution of \$COPY, or
- Copy only one volume of the file in each execution of \$COPY.

For example, if you copy a 3-volume file one volume at a time (volume 1 in the first execution, volume 2 in the second execution, and volume 3 in the third execution), the output file volumes will retain the original input date and volume sequence numbers. Or, if you copy all the volumes (1, 2, and 3) in the same execution, the system will assign the current system date and new volume sequence numbers in the output file. However, if you copy only volumes 2 and 3 in one execution, the output file volumes will be assigned the current system date and volume sequence numbers 1 and 2.

### Maintaining Correct Relative Record Numbers

To maintain correct relative record numbers when copying one volume of a multivolume direct file, the size of the output volume must be the same size of the input volume. (If you want to increase the size of a file, you must copy the entire file.) If, for example, you copy the first volume of a 2-volume file and increase the number of records on that volume, you are also increasing relative record numbers of all the records on the next volume. Therefore, output and input volume extents must be equal if you are copying only one volume of a multivolume direct file.

*Note:* You cannot use the copy program to copy a single volume file to a multivolume file. End of extents will probably occur after the first volume of output. If the output file is a new file, the copy program will not create it as a multivolume file.

## Direct File Attributes

If you copy a whole multivolume direct file in one run, the output file will be given sequential attributes in the Volume Table of Contents (VTOC). However, this does not affect file processing. A file with either sequential or direct attributes can be accessed by a consecutive or direct access method. If only one volume is copied, the direct attribute will be maintained.

### Copying Multivolume Index Files

If you want to copy a multivolume indexed file, REORG-YES must be given. Since an unordered multivolume indexed load is not permitted, a REORG-NO will cause a halt if an out-of-sequence record is found. If you would prefer not to reorganize the file, each volume of the file must be copied as a single volume file. When copying each volume separately, it can be either ordered or unordered. When copying one volume of a multivolume indexed file, either REORG-YES or REORG-NO may be specified. HIKEY parameter(s) of the output file must be the same as the highest key(s) of each input volume.

## CONTROL STATEMENTS

You must supply the following control statements to specify the program options you want:

1. *COPYPACK statement*—indicates that an entire disk is to be copied. It contains the unit of the disk to be copied and the disk to which the copying is being done.
2. *COPYFILE statement*—indicates that all or part of a data file is being copied or printed or both, whether the file is to be reorganized, and whether any records are to be deleted.
3. *SELECT KEY (or PKY) statement*—indicates, according to record keys, which part of an indexed file you want copied or printed. The *SELECT PKY* parameter applies to selecting part of an indexed file that contains packed keys.
4. *SELECT RECORD statement*—indicates, according to relative record numbers, which part of a file you want copied or printed.
5. *KEY statement*—indicates that an indexed file will be built from a sequential file.
6. *END statement*—indicates the end of control statements.

## Control Statement Summary

Uses ①	Control Statements ②
Copy an Entire Disk:	<pre>// COPYPACK FROM-code, TO-code // END</pre>
Copy a Data File:	<pre>// COPYFILE {OUTPTX-} {FILE} {3741} ,INPUT- {3741} ,LENGTH-number, {DELETE-} 'position,character'               {OUTPUT-} {DISK} {DATA96} {DATA96}               ,REORG- {NO} ,WORK- {NO}                     {YES} {YES}</pre> <pre>// END</pre>
Copy and Print a Data File:	<pre>// COPYFILE {OUTPTX-} {BOTH} {3741} ,INPUT- 3741 ,LENGTH-number,               {OUTPUT-} {'PRINT,3741'} {DATA96}               {'PRINT,DATA96'}               {DELETE-} 'position,character',REORG-YES,WORK- {NO}               {OMIT-} 'position,character',REORG-YES,WORK- {YES}</pre> <pre>// END</pre>
Copy a Data File, But Print Only a Part of the File:	<pre>// COPYFILE {OUTPTX-} {BOTH} {3741} ,INPUT- {3741} ,LENGTH-number,               {OUTPUT-} {'PRINT,3741'} {DATA96}               {'PRINT,DATA96'}               {DELETE-} 'position,character',REORG-YES,WORK- {NO}               {OMIT-} 'position,character',REORG-YES,WORK- {YES}</pre> <pre>// SELECT KEY, {FROM-} 'key'                {TO-} 'key'</pre> <pre>// SELECT KEY, FROM-'key', TO-'key'</pre> <pre>// SELECT RECORD, {FROM-} number                   {TO-} number</pre> <pre>// SELECT RECORD, FROM-number, TO-number</pre> <pre>// SELECT PKY, {FROM-} 'key'                {TO-} 'key'</pre> <pre>// SELECT PKY, FROM-'key', TO-'key'</pre> <pre>// END</pre>
Print an Entire Data File:	<pre>// COPYFILE {OUTPTX-} PRINT,INPUT- {3741} ,LENGTH-number               {OUTPUT-} DATA96 {DATA96}</pre> <pre>// END</pre>

Print Only a Part  
of a Data File

```

// COPYFILE { OUTPTX- } PRINT,INPUT- { 3741 } ,LENGTH-number 6
//          { OUTPUT- } DATA96
// SELECT KEY, { FROM- } 'key' 4
//            { TO- }
// SELECT KEY, FROM-'key',TO-'key'
// SELECT RECORD, { FROM- } number 4
//               { TO- }
// SELECT RECORD, FROM-number,TO-number
// SELECT PKY, { FROM- } 'key' 7
//            { TO- }
// SELECT PKY, FROM-'key',TO-'key' 7
// END

```

One of these 6

Print and Copy  
a Part of a Data  
File

```

// COPYFILE { OUTPTX- } { BOTH
//          { OUTPUT- } 'PRINT,3741' } ,INPUT- { 3741 } ,LENGTH-number,WORK- { NO } 5 8
//          { 'PRINT,DATA96' } DATA96 { YES }
// SELECT KEY, { FROM- } 'key'
//            { TO- }
// SELECT KEY, FROM-'key',TO-'key',FILE-YES
// SELECT RECORD, { FROM- } number,FILES-YES
//               { TO- }
// SELECT RECORD, FROM-number,TO-number,FILE-YES
// SELECT PKY, { FROM- } 'key',FILES-YES
//            { TO- }
// SELECT PKY, FROM-'key',TO-'key',FILE-YES
// END

```

Copy a Part of  
a Data File

```

// COPYFILE { OUTPTX- } { FILE
//          { OUTPUT- } DISK } ,INPUT- { 3741 } ,LENGTH-number,WORK- { NO } 5 8
//          { 3741 } DATA96 { YES }
//          { DATA96 }
// SELECT KEY, { FROM- } 'key',FILES-YES
//            { TO- }
// SELECT KEY, FROM-'key',TO-'key',FILE-YES
// SELECT RECORD, { FROM- } number,FILES-YES
//               { TO- }
// SELECT RECORD, FROM-number,TO-number,FILE-YES
// SELECT PKY, { FROM- } 'key',FILES-YES
//            { TO- }
// SELECT PKY, FROM-'key',FILE-YES
// END

```

One of these

Building an Indexed File from a Sequential File

```

// COPYFILE {OUTPTX-} {FILE }
              {OUTPUT-} {DISK } ,INPUT- { 3741 } ,LENGTH-number 5
              {          } {BOTH} { DATA96 }
// KEY LENGTH-number, LOCATION-number
// END

```

- 1 The program uses include the possible combinations of copying and printing files.
- 2 For each use, the program requires the control statements in the order they are listed: COPYPACK, END; COPYFILE, END; COPYFILE,SELECT,END,COPYFILE,KEY,END; and COPYFILE,SELECT,KEY,END.
- 3 Needed only if you want to delete a certain type of record. DELETE cannot be used with direct files.
- 4 Applies only to indexed files. When OUTPUT-BOTH is specified, REORG-YES is required.
- 5 Optional when using the 3741 for input or output. The record length defaults to 96 if LENGTH is not specified.
- 6 Identifies the portion you want to print.
- 7 Index files with packed keys.
- 8 WORK-YES is required if you are copying the file from one removable disk to another removable disk using the same disk drive (drive one). WORK-NO may be used, but is not required, if you are copying the file from one area to another on the removable disk on drive one.

## Parameter Summary

COPYPACK Statement Parameters	Meaning
FROM-code	Location of disk to be copied. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2.
TO-code	Location of disk to contain the copy. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2.
<b>COPYFILE Statement Parameters</b>	
OUTPUT-DISK	Copy the file from one disk to another, or from one area to another on the same disk. ❶
OUTPUT-FILE	Copy the file from one disk to another, or from one area to another on the same disk (interchangeable with OUTPUT-DISK).
OUTPUT- { 3741 DATA96 }	Copy the file to the device specified. When this parameter is used, a COPYO file statement must not be used.
OUTPUT-PRINT	Print the entire file or only part of the file. ❷
OUTPUT-BOTH	Copy the file from one disk to another, or from one area to another on the same disk. ❸ Also print the entire file or only part of it.
OUTPUT- { 'PRINT,3741' 'PRINT,DATA96' }	Copy the file to the device specified and print all or part of the file. When this parameter is used, a COPYO file statement must not be used.
OUTPTX- { PRINT BOTH 'PRINT,3741' 'PRINT,DATA96' }	Printed output will be displayed in hexadecimal values. If 3741 or DATA96 is used, a COPYO file statement must not be used. 'BOTH' refers to printer and disk.
INPUT- { 3741 DATA96 }	Copy the file from the device specified. If this keyword is used, a COPYIN file statement must not be used.
LENGTH-number	Specifies the record length for the 3741. Number must be an integer from 1 to 128. If this keyword is not specified, a record length of 96 will be assumed. It will be ignored if used with any other device.
DELETE-'position,character' -or- OMIT-'position,character'	These parameters are optional. It means that all records with the specified character in the specified record position are deleted. DELETE causes deleted records to be printed. OMIT causes deleted records not be printed. Position can be any position in the record (the first position is 1, second 2, and so on). The maximum position is 9999.
REORG-NO ❷	Indexed files only. Copy records in the same way as they are organized in the original file (the file from which the records are copied).
REORG-YES ❷	Indexed files only. Reorganize the records so that the records in the data portion of the file are in the same order as their keys are listed in the index.
WORK-NO ❸	May be used, but is not required, for copying a file from one area to another area on the same removable disk on drive one (R1). It means: do not use a work area.
WORK-YES ❸	Required for copying a file from one removable disk on drive one to another removable disk on that drive. It means: use a work area on the fixed disk on drive one.

SELECT Statement Parameters	Meaning
-----------------------------	---------

} KEY { PKY }	,FROM-'key'	Indexed files only. Print or copy only the part of the file from the record key that is specified in the FROM parameter to the end of the file.
	RECORD,TO-number	Print or copy only the part of the file from the start of the file to the record number specified in the TO parameter.
} KEY { PKY }	,FROM-'key',TO-'key'	Indexed files only. Print or copy only the part of the file between the two record keys that are specified in the FROM and TO parameters (including the records indicated by the parameters). To print or copy only one record, make the FROM and TO record keys the same.
	RECORD,FROM-number	Print or copy only the part of the file from the relative record number specified in the FROM parameter to the end of the file.
} KEY { PKY }	,TO-'key'	Indexed files only. Print or copy only the part of the file from the start of the file to the record key specified in the TO parameter.
	RECORD,FROM-number, TO-number	Print or copy only the part of the file between the relative record numbers indicated by the parameters (including the records indicated by the parameter). To print or copy only one record, the FROM and TO record keys should be the same.
	FILE-YES	Only selected records are copied to the file named in the COPYO file statement or to the device (3741 or DATA96) specified in the OUTPUT keyword parameter of the // COPYFILE control statement. The file will be sequential if no // KEY statement is used. When a // KEY statement is used, the output file will be indexed and the device specified in the COPYO file statement must be a disk.
	FILE-NO	Only selected records are printed if OUTPUT-PRINT is used. If OUTPUT-BOTH is used, selected records are printed and the entire file is copied to the file named in the COPYO file statement or the device (3741 or DATA96) specified in the OUTPUT keyword parameter of the // COPYFILE control statement.
	KEY-statement LENGTH-number	Identifies the length of the key field. The number can be from 1 to 29.
	LOCATION-number	Identifies the starting location of the key field in the input record. The number can be from 1 to 16,384.

- 1 In the OCL load sequence, the operator indicates which file is to be copied or printed unless the files are 3741 or DATA96. For files being copied, he must also indicate whether the file is being copied from one disk to another or from one location to another on the same disk using the COPYO and COPYIN file statements. COPYO and COPYIN file statements are invalid for 3741 and DATA96. For 3741 and DATA96, the INPUT and OUTPUT keywords in the // COPYFILE statement are used.
- 2 REORG-NO is assumed if you omit the REORG parameter. When OUTPUT-BOTH is used for indexed files, REORG-YES is required.
- 3 If the WORK keyword is not specified, NO is assumed.



## PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

### FROM and TO Parameters (COPYPACK Statement)

The COPYPACK statement is used to copy the contents of one disk to another. It has two parameters: FROM and TO. They tell the program the locations of the two disks on the disk units.

The FROM parameter (FROM-code) indicates the location of the disk you are copying. The TO parameter (TO-code) indicates the location of the disk that is to contain the copy.

Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

### OUTPUT Parameter (COPYFILE Statement)

The OUTPUT parameter is used when copying and printing card, diskette, or disk data files. It indicates whether you want the program to copy, print, or copy and print a file. The OUTPTX parameter can be used to display printed output in hexadecimal values.

The parameter OUTPUT-DISK or OUTPUT-FILE means to copy the file to disk. OUTPUT-PRINT means to print the file; OUTPUT-BOTH means to copy and print the file. OUTPUT-DATA96 or OUTPUT-3741 means to copy the file to the device named in the keyword parameter. OUTPUT-PRINT,DATA96' or OUTPUT-PRINT,3741' means to copy and print the file to the device named in the keyword parameter and print the file.

The output file must be a new file when copying to disk unless the existing file you are copying over is a temporary file in which case the following rules apply.

1. If RECORDS were used to create the existing temporary file then the COPYO file card must specify RECORDS and LOCATION. RECORDS must be equal to the number used to create the original file.
2. If TRACKS were used to create the existing temporary file then the COPYO file card must specify TRACKS and LOCATION. TRACKS must be equal to the number used to create the original file.

### INPUT Parameter (COPYFILE Statement)

The INPUT parameter is used when copying from either the 3741 or the DATA96. INPUT-3741 or INPUT-DATA96 indicates that the input file to be copied is on the device named in the INPUT keyword parameter.

### LENGTH Parameter (COPYFILE Statement)

This parameter identifies the record length for the 3741 and is any number from 1 to 128. This keyword is optional whether the 3741 is being used as input or output. If this parameter is not specified, the record length defaults to 96.

When the 3741 is used, the length parameter must be equal to the record length in the HDR1 label on the 3741 and is any number from 1 to 128.

When the 3741 is used as output and the input is disk or DATA96, the LENGTH parameter can be any number from 1 to 128 regardless of the record length of the disk INPUT device. If the record length specified on the 3741 is greater than the record length from the input file, the remainder of the record will be filled with blanks (X'40'). If the record length from the disk, card or tape file is greater than the LENGTH specified, the record is truncated.

This keyword will be ignored if used with a device other than a 3741.

### DELETE Parameter (COPYFILE Statement)

In copying a data file, the Copy/Dump program can omit records of one type. The DELETE parameter identifies the type of records. Use of the DELETE parameter is optional. If you do not use it, no records are deleted.

The form of the parameter is DELETE-'position,character'. *Position* is the position of the character in the record. It can be any position in the record (the first position is 1, the second 2, and so on) up to the maximum position of 9999. *Character* is the character, except for apostrophes, blanks, or commas, that identifies the record. For example, with the parameter DELETE-'100,R', all records with an R in position 100 are deleted. By specifying the hexadecimal code for the character, any character (including apostrophes, blanks, commas, and packed data) can be used to identify the record to be deleted. For example, with the parameter DELETE-'100,X40', all records with a blank (hexadecimal 40) in position 100 are deleted.

Deleted records are always printed. If you are both copying and printing a data file, deleted records are printed with the other records that are printed. The deleted records are preceded by the word DELETED.

The OMIT keyword can be used instead of DELETE. The deleted records are not printed if OMIT is used.

### REORG (Reorganize) Parameter (COPYFILE Statement)

In copying an indexed file, the program can reorganize the file, such that the records in the data portion are in the same order as their keys in the file index. The REORG parameter tells the program whether or not to reorganize the file.

REORG-YES means to reorganize. REORG-NO means not to reorganize. REORG-NO is assumed if you omit the keyword.

If you tell the program to reorganize the file, the reorganization applies to the copy of the file rather than the original file. The original file is not affected.

Reorganization (REORG-YES) is required any time you are both copying and printing an indexed file (OUTPUT-BOTH).

### WORK Parameter (COPYFILE Statement)

The WORK parameter applies to copying a data file from one removable disk to another removable disk using the same disk drive (drive 1). It tells the program whether or not to use a work area on the fixed disk on drive 1.

The parameter WORK-YES means to use a work area. WORK-NO means not to use a work area.

*Note:* The following table shows the maximum number of volumes that can be copied in one run using the WORK parameter:

Parameter	Single-Volume Indexed Files	Multivolume Indexed Files	Consecutive or Direct Files
WORK-YES	19 volumes	9 volumes	19 volumes
WORK-NO	20 volumes	10 volumes	20 volumes

### Work Area

If you have only one disk drive (R1 and F1), a common use of the Copy/Dump program might be to copy a file from one removable disk to another removable disk. To do this, the program must use a work area on the fixed disk.

### **SELECT KEY and PKY Parameters (SELECT Statement)**

The **SELECT KEY** and **SELECT PKY** parameters apply to copying part of an indexed file. The parameters are **FROM** and **TO**.

The **FROM** parameter (**FROM-'key'**) gives the key of the first record to be selected. The **TO** parameter (**TO-'key'**) gives the key of the last record to be selected. The record key between those two in the file index identify the remaining records to be selected. If you want to select only one record, use the same record key in both the **FROM** and **TO** parameters.

For example, the parameters **FROM-'000100'** and **TO-'000199'** mean that records identified by keys 000100 through 000199 are to be selected.

If the file index does not contain the key you indicate in a **FROM** parameter, the program uses the next higher key in the index.

You can omit the **FROM** or the **TO** parameter, but not both. If you omit the **FROM** parameter, the program assumes that the first key in the index is the **FROM** key. If you omit the **TO** parameter, the program assumes that the last key in the index is the **TO** key.

With the **SELECT KEY** parameter (but not **PKY**) you can use less characters in the **FROM** or **TO** parameter than are contained in the actual keys. If you do, the program ignores the remaining characters in the key. The number of characters used in the **FROM** and **TO** parameters need not be the same.

For example, assume that the following are consecutive record keys in an index: 99999, A1000, A1119, A1275, A1900, A1995, and A2075. The parameters **FROM-'A1'** and **TO-'A199'** refer to record keys A1000 through A1995.

If none of the keys in the file index begin with the characters you indicate in a **FROM** parameter, the program uses the key beginning with the next higher characters.

For example, assume that four consecutive record keys in an index begin with these characters: A1,A2,A8, and B1. The parameters **FROM-'A3'** and **TO-'A9'** would refer to the key beginning with the character A8.

### **SELECT RECORD Parameters (SELECT Statement)**

The **SELECT RECORD** parameters can apply to any file, but are normally used for sequential and direct files. These parameters use relative record numbers to identify the records to be selected.

Relative record numbers identify the record's location with respect to other records in the file. The relative record number of the first record is 1, the number of the second record is 2, and so on.

The **SELECT RECORD** parameters are **FROM** and **TO**. The **FROM** parameter (**FROM-number**) gives the relative record number of the first record to be selected. The **TO** parameter (**TO-number**) gives the number of the last record to be selected. Records between those two records in the file are also selected. If you want to select only one record, use the same record number in the **FROM** and **TO** parameters.

For example, the parameters **FROM-1** and **TO-30** mean that the first thirty records (1-30) in the file will be selected.

You can omit the **FROM** or the **TO** parameter, but not both. If you omit the **FROM** Parameter, the program assumes **FROM-1**. If you omit the **TO** parameter, the program assumes that the number of the last record in the file is the **TO** number.

*Note:* The maximum number allowed is 16,777,215.

### **FILE Parameter (SELECT Statement)**

This parameter allows only selected records to be copied to a disk, card, diskette or printer.

## **LENGTH and LOCATION Parameters (KEY Statement)**

The KEY statement is used when building an indexed file from a sequential file. The LENGTH parameter specifies the length (1 to 29) of the key field. The LOCATION parameter specifies the starting location (1 to 16384) of the key field in the input record. When the KEY statement is used, the file described in the COPYO file statement must be a disk file; and OUTPUT-DISK, OUTPUT-FILE or OUTPUT-BOTH must be specified in the COPYFILE control statement.

## **CARD AND DISKETTE CONSIDERATIONS (\$COPY)**

### **Card or Diskette Input**

For card or diskette input files, end-of-file will be determined by the presence of a record with /\* in positions 1 and 2 and positions 3 through 80 or 3 through 96 or 3 through 128 blank. This allows a card or diskette input file to contain /\* records, assuming that at least one character is in positions 3 through 80, 3 through 96 or 3 through 128. A /& is handled the same as a /\* record unless the input device is the system READER. The presence of a record with /& in positions 1 and 2 from the system READER will be regarded as absolute end of file.

### **Card or Diskette Output**

If the input record size (in bytes) is greater than the size of the card or diskette record, the input record will be truncated. If the input record size is less than the size of the card or diskette record, the remaining portion of the card or diskette record will contain blanks. For example, if the input file contains 60-byte records, the card will contain blanks in columns 61 through 80 or 61 through 96 or 61 through 128. The diskette will be blank in the remaining portion of the record length specified.

## OCL CONSIDERATIONS

### LOAD Sequence for Copying an Entire Disk

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$COPY	Name of Copy/Dump program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Copy/Dump program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

### BUILD Sequence for Copying an Entire Disk

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$COPY	Name of Copy/Dump program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Copy/Dump program.
MODIFY	INCLUDE utility control statements OR RUN RUN	Response when including control statements in procedure.  Response when not including control statements in procedure

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

## LOAD Sequence for Copying or Printing Files

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$COPY	Name of Copy/Dump program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Copy/Dump program.
FILE NAME	COPYIN	Name Copy/Dump program uses to refer to file to be copied (input file).
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing file to be copied.
PACK	disk name	Name of disk containing file to be copied.
LABEL	file name	Name by which file to be copied is identified on disk.
FILE NAME	COPYO OR Press PROG START	Name Copy/Dump program uses to refer to output file being created.  If you are only printing records from a file, press PROG START instead of typing COPYO. The next keyword prompted will be MODIFY.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk on which output file is to be created.
PACK	disk name	Name of disk on which output file is to be identified on disk.
LABEL	file name	Name by which output file is to be identified on disk.
RECORDS or TRACKS	number	Size of output file expressed either as number of records (RECORDS) or number of disk tracks (TRACKS).
RETAIN	T, P, or S	Designation (temporary, permanent, or scratch) of output file.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.



**EXAMPLES**

**Copying an Entire Disk**

*Statements*

READY

\*\*\*\*\*

010 LOAD NAME -

011 UNIT -

020 DATE (XX/XX/XX) -

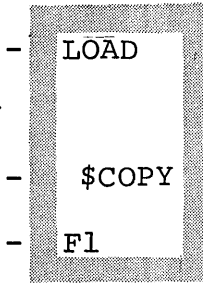
030 SWITCH (0000000) -

040 FILE NAME -

\*\*\*\*\*

MODIFY

**RUN**



**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed. If you press ENTER— after responding to UNIT, the DATE, SWITCH, and FILE NAME keywords are not prompted.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

ENTER '//'	CONTROL STATEMENT	}	Message printed by Copy/Dump program.
//	COPYPACK FROM-F2,TO-R2	}	Control statement supplied by operator.
ENTER '//'	CONTROL STATEMENT	}	System reprompts. END statement terminates sequence.
//	END	}	
COPYPACK IS COMPLETE		}	Message printed by Copy/Dump program to indicate successful copy.

*Explanation*

- The Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The contents of the fixed disk on drive 2 (FROM-F2 in COPYPACK statement) are copied onto the removable disk on drive 2 (TO-R2).



# Copying a File From One Disk to Another

## Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME  - COPYIN
041          UNIT - F1
042          PACK - A1
043          LABEL - MASTER
050  FILE  NAME  - COPYO
051          UNIT - R1
052          PACK - B2
053          LABEL - BACKUP
054          RECORDS -
055          TRACKS - 50
056          LOCATION -
057          RETAIN - P
*****
  
```

File to be copied  
(input file)

File being created  
(output file)

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

MODIFY

**RUN**

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Copy/Dump program.
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-DISK      } Control statement supplied by operator.
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } System reprompts. END statement terminates sequence.
// END
  
```

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Input file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name that identifies file on disk is MASTER (LABEL-MASTER).
  2. Disk that contains the file is the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1). Its name is A1 (PACK-A1).
- Output file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name to be written on disk to identify the file is BACKUP (LABEL-BACKUP).
  2. Disk that is to contain the file is the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1). Its name is B2 (PACK-B2).
  3. The file is to be permanent (RETAIN-P).
  4. The length of the file is 50 tracks (TRACKS-50).
- The COPYFILE statement tells the program to create the output file using all the data from the input file. The output file is a copy of the input file.

**Printing Part of a File**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE          -
030  SWITCH        -
040  FILE  NAME  - COPYIN
041          UNIT - R1
042          PACK - B2
043          LABEL - BACKUP
050  FILE  NAME  -
*****
MODIFY          -

```

**RUN**

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-PRINT
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// SELECT KEY, FROM-'ADAMS', TO-'BAKER'
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END

```

Input file

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

} Message printed by Copy/Dump program.

} Control statement supplied by operator.

} Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Input file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name that identifies the file on disk is BACKUP (LABEL-BACKUP).
  2. Disk that contains the file is the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1). Its name is B2 (PACK-B2).
- The file is being printed (COPYFILE statement).
- The file is an indexed file. The part being printed is identified by the record keys from ADAMS to BAKER in the index (SELECT statement).

**Copy a Disk File to a Card File**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME  - COPYIN
041          UNIT - R1
042          PACK - R1R1R1
043          LABEL - MASTER
050  FILE  NAME
    
```

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

*****

MODIFY
RUN
  ENTER "//" CONTROL STATEMENT }
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-DATA96      }
  ENTER '/' CONTROL STATEMENT  }
// END
    
```

Message printed by Copy/Dump program.

Control statement supplied by operator.

Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Input file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name that identifies the file on disk is MASTER (LABEL-MASTER).
  2. Disk that contains the file is the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1). Its name is R1R1R1 (PACK-R1R1R1).
- The file is being copied to cards OUTPUT-DATA96 (COPYFILE statement).

**Copy a Disk File to the 3741 (Diskette)**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME  - COPYIN
041          UNIT - R1
042          PACK - R1R1R1
043          LABEL - SALES
050  FILE  NAME
*****

```

LOAD

COPYIN

R1

R1R1R1

SALES

Input file

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

MODIFY

RUN

```

ENTER ' //' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Copy/Dump program.
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-3741,LENGTH-128 } Control Statement supplied by operator.
ENTER ' //' CONTROL STATEMENT } Sequence repeats until operator enters END
// END } statement.

```

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Input file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name that identifies the file on disk is SALES (LABEL-SALES).
  2. Disk that contains the file is the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1). Its name is R1R1R1 (PACK-R1R1R1).
- The file is being copied to the 3741 diskette OUTPUT-3741 (COPYFILE statement). The record length on the 3741 output file is 128 (LENGTH-128).

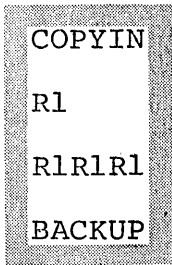
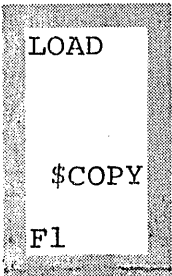
**Copy a Disk File to the 3741 (Diskette) and Print a Part of the File**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME  - COPYIN
041          UNIT - R1
042          PACK - R1R1R1
043          LABEL - BACKUP
050  FILE  NAME
*****

```



Input file

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

MODIFY

**RUN**

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Copy/Dump program.
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-'PRINT,3741',LENGTH-80 } Control statement supplied by operator.
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// SELECT RECORD, FROM-5, TO-325
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END

```

Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- INPUT file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name that identifies the file on disk is BACKUP (LABEL-BACKUP).
  2. Disk that contains the file is the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1). Its name is R1R1R1 (PACK-R1R1R1).
- The entire file will be copied from disk to the 3741 (OUTPUT-3741). The record length of the file on the 3741 is 80 (LENGTH-80). Records 5 through 325 will be printed (RECORD, FROM-5, TO-325).

**Copy a Card File to a Diskette and Print the Entire File**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME
*****
MODIFY
RUN
    
```

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Copy/Dump program.
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-'PRINT,3741',INPUT-DATA96,LENGTH-96 } Control statement supplied
                                                             by operator.
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT }
// END                          } Sequence repeats until operator enters END
                                                             statement.
    
```

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The entire card file from the DATA96 (INPUT-DATA96) will be copied to the 3741 diskette and printed (OUTPUT-'PRINT,3741'). The record length of the output file on the 3741 will be 96 (LENGTH-96).

**Copy and Print a Portion of a File on a Diskette to a Card Device**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          NAME  - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME
*****

MODIFY
RUN

```

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT

```

Message printed by Copy/Dump program.

```

// COPYFILE OUTPUT-'PRINT,DATA96',INPUT-3741,LENGTH-100

```

} Control statement supplied by operator.

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT

```

```

// SELECT RECORD, FROM-16, TO-67, FILE-YES

```

} Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT

```

```

// END

```

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1).
- Records 16 through 67 will be copied (FILE-YES) to the DATA96 and printed (OUTPUT-'PRINT,DATA96') from the 3741 diskette (INPUT-3741) and the record length in the HDR1 label on the 3741 diskette is 100 (LENGTH-100).

*Note:* Only the first 96 positions of the diskette records will be copied to the DATA96.



**Copy a Diskette File to a Disk File and Print Only the Copied Records**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD      - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME - COPYO
041          UNIT - R2
042          PACK - R2R2R2
043          LABEL - MASTER
044          TRACKS - 5
045          RETAIN - T
050  FILE  NAME
*****

```

MODIFY

**RUN**

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-BOTH,INPUT-3741,LENGTH-50
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// SELECT RECORD,FROM-10,TO-300,FILE-YES
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END

```

Output file

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

} Message printed by Copy/Dump program.

} Control statement supplied by operator.

} Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

### *Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- OUTPUT file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name to be written on disk is MASTER (LABEL-MASTER).
  2. Disk that is to contain the file is the removable disk on drive 2 (UNIT-R2). Its name is R2R2R2 (PACK-R2R2R2).
  3. The size of the file is 5 tracks (TRACKS-5).
  4. The file is to be temporary (RETAIN-T).
- Records 10 to 300 will be copied (FILE-YES) and printed (OUTPUT-BOTH). Input is the 3741 (INPUT-3741) and the record length in the HDR1 label on the 3741 is 50 (LENGTH-50).

**Create an Indexed File from a Sequential Card File**

*Statement*

```
READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD      NAME - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE      NAME - COPYO
041          UNIT - R2
042          LABEL - SALES
043          PACK - R2R2R2
044          TRACKS - 15
045          RETAIN - T
050  FILE      NAME -
*****
```

MODIFY

**RUN**

```
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-DISK,INPUT-DATA96
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// KEY LENGTH-5, LOCATION-1
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END
```

**Output  
File**

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

Message printed by Copy/Dump program.

Control statement supplied by operator.

Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

*Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- OUTPUT file (OCL sequence):
  1. Name to be written on disk is SALES (LABEL-SALES).
  2. Disk that is to contain the output file is the removable disk on drive 2 (UNIT-R2). Its name is R2R2R2 (PACK-R2R2R2).
  3. The file is to be temporary (RETAIN-T).
  4. The size of the file is 15 tracks (TRACKS-15).
- The COPYFILE statement tells the program that all records will be copied (OUTPUT-DISK) from card input (INPUT-DATA96).
- The KEY statement tells the program to create an index of 5-byte keys (LENGTH-5) starting in position 1 (LOCATION-1).

**Create an Indexed Disk File from Sequential Disk Input**

*Statement*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD  NAME  - $COPY
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE  NAME  - COPYIN
041          UNIT - R1
042          PACK - R1R1R1
043          LABEL - CONSVF
050  FILE  NAME  - COPYO
051          UNIT - R2
052          PACK - R2R2R2
053          LABEL - INDSVF
054          RECORDS - 50
055          LOCATION- 8
056          RETAIN - T
060  FILE  NAME  -
    
```

\*\*\*\*\*

MODIFY

**RUN**

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// COPYFILE OUTPUT-DISK
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// KEY LENGTH-5, LOCATION-1
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END
    
```

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

Input File

Output File

Message printed by Copy/Dump program.

Control statement supplied by operator.

Sequence repeats until operator enters END statement.

### *Explanation*

- Copy/Dump program is loaded from fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Input file (OCL sequence)
  1. Name that identifies file on disk is CONSVF (LABEL-CONSVF).
  2. Disk that contains the file is the removable disk on drive 1 (UNIT-R1).
- Output file (OCL sequence)
  1. Name to be written on disk to identify the file is INDSVF (LABEL-INDSVF).
  2. Disk that is to contain the file is the removable disk on drive 2 (UNIT-R2). Its name is R2R2R2 (PACK-R2R2R2).
  3. The file is to be temporary (RETAIN-T).
  4. The file will contain 50 records (RECORDS-50).
  5. The file is located at track 8 (LOCATION-8).
- The COPYFILE statement tells the program to create the output file (OUTPUT-DISK) using all the data from the input file.
- The KEY statement tells the program to create an index of 5-byte keys (LENGTH-5) starting in position 1 (LOCATION-1).

## Library Maintenance Program (\$MAINT)

Your programs are stored on disk in an area called a *library*. You can update or add new entries in this library. In order to do so, you must use the Library Maintenance program.

The Library Maintenance program (\$MAINT) has five functions:

Function	Meaning
Allocate	Create (reserve space for), delete, reorganize, and change the sizes of libraries; create the scheduler work area and roll-in/roll-out area on a system pack.
Copy	Place entries in, and display the contents of, libraries.
Delete	Delete library entries.
Modify	Modify source library entries.
Rename	Change the names of library entries.

The control statements you must supply depend on the function you are using.

All packs referenced by the control statements must remain online during the Library Maintenance run.

### Library Description

#### Source Library

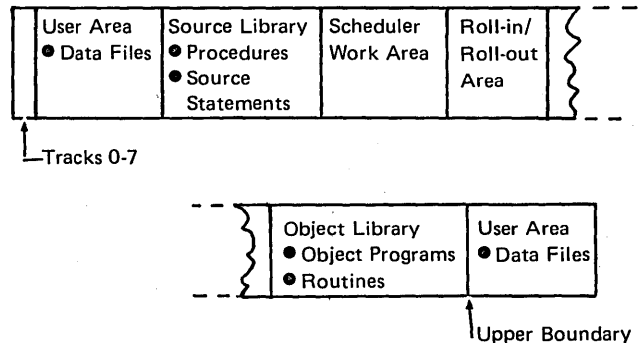
The source library is an area on disk for storing procedures and source statements. Procedures are groups of OCL statements used to load programs. The statements can be followed by input data for the programs. (Procedures for utility programs can, for example, contain utility control statements.) Source statements are sets of data, the most common of which are RPG II source programs and Disk Sort sequence specifications.

#### Object Library

The object library is an area on disk for storing object programs and routines. Object programs are programs and subroutines in such a form that they can be loaded for execution. (They are sometimes called load modules.) Routines are programs and subroutines that need to be link-edited into object programs before they can be loaded for execution. (They are sometimes called object modules.)

### Location of Libraries on Disk

Libraries can be located anywhere on disk. However, the location of a source library with respect to an object library is always the same:



The boundaries of a source library are fixed. They can be changed only by the allocate function of the Library Maintenance program. The upper boundary of an object library, however, can be moved as additional space is needed when entries are placed in the library. This happens only if space is available following the library and if the entries being placed beyond the normal boundary are not permanent entries.

### Organization of Library Entries

Entries are stored in the object library serially; that is, a 20-sector program occupies 20 consecutive sectors. Temporary entries follow all permanent entries in the object library.

If necessary, the upper boundary is changed to allow more space for temporary entries. The upper boundary of the library is extended to the end of the pack or to the first temporary or permanent file, allowing the maximum amount of space for the temporary library entry. At the successful completion of the copy, the upper boundary is returned to the track boundary at the end of the last temporary entry. If the copy was not completed successfully, the upper boundary may remain extended. When a permanent entry is placed in the library or the library is reorganized, all temporary entries are deleted and the upper boundary returns to its original location. Permanent entries cannot exceed the original upper boundary.

Gaps can occur in the object library when an entry is deleted. The associated directory entries will point to these gaps. When the Library Maintenance program places a new entry in the library, it searches the directory for a gap that has the same number of sectors, or the fewest number of sectors over the number required by the new entry. If the entry is smaller than the gap, the last part of the gap will not be pointed to by a directory entry. Since this gap has no directory entry, it will not be used until the library is reorganized.

If the number of unusable sectors becomes excessive, the library should be reorganized. In reorganizing entries, the Library Maintenance program deletes temporary entries and shifts permanent entries so that gaps do not appear between them. This makes more sectors available for use.

The source library differs from the object library in that entries within the source library need not be stored in consecutive sectors. An entry can be stored in many widely separated sectors with each sector pointing to the sector that contains the next part of the entry. When an entry is placed in the source library, it is placed in as many sectors as required regardless of where the sectors are located within the library.

The boundary of the source library cannot be expanded; therefore, an entry must fit within the available library space. To provide as much space as possible within the prescribed limits of the source library, the system compresses entries. That is, blanks and duplicate characters are removed from entries. Later, if the entries are printed or punched, the blanks and duplicate characters are reinserted. When the size of the source library is changed or the source library is reorganized, all temporary entries are deleted.

### *Library Directories*

The program creates a separate directory for each library. Every library entry has a corresponding entry in its library directory. The directory entry contains such information as the name and location of the library entry. The program also creates a system directory, which contains information about the size and available space in libraries and their directories.

### **Organization of This Section**

The five functions are described separately. Every description contains the following:

1. List of specific uses.
2. Control statement summary indicating the form of the control statement needed for each use.
3. Parameter descriptions explaining, in detail, the contents and meanings of the parameters.
4. Function descriptions explaining the details of each function.
5. Examples that include OCL statements, utility control statements, and explanations of their use.

OCL considerations for the program precede the examples.

### **ALLOCATE**

The allocate function of the Library Maintenance program allows you to:

- Create libraries, scheduler work area, and roll-in/roll-out area.
- Change the size of libraries.
- Delete libraries.
- Reorganize libraries.

### **Creating Libraries**

Creating a library involves:

- Assigning a library to a disk.
- Assigning space for the library directory.
- Using a work area.

*Assigning a Library to a Disk:* You are allowed one source and one object library per disk. The libraries can be located anywhere on the disk where space is made available as long as the source library precedes the object library. You needn't have both libraries on a disk.



**Assigning Space for the Library Directory:** The Library Maintenance program creates a separate directory for each library. A *directory for a source or object library* contains information concerning each library entry. This information includes the name and location of the library entry. For a source library, the first two sectors of the first track are assigned to the directory. For an object library which includes system programs, the first three tracks are assigned to the directory. If system programs are not included, only the first track is assigned to the directory. The directory size is overridden by the DIRSIZE parameter if used (see DIRSIZE).

Another type of directory, the system directory, is also created by this program. The *system directory* contains information concerning the libraries and their directories. This information includes the size of and available space in the libraries and their directories. The system directory is contained in the volume label on any disk pack.

#### **Allocate Considerations and Restrictions**

This program has restrictions and operating conditions that the user must be aware of when maintaining libraries.

#### **Allocation of Disk Space**

The Library Maintenance program allocates disk space for each of the following functions:

- Create a library
- Increase the size of a library
- Reorganize a library
- Dynamically extend an object library to copy temporary entries to the library
- Sort a directory before it is printed
- Modify a source library entry

The space allocated by the program is the first contiguous space large enough for the function to be performed. The Library Maintenance program will use as much space as is available to the end of the pack or to the first temporary or permanent data file, removing all scratch files in this area. If within a single load of the program, there are functions performed which require more than four disk areas to be allocated, a halt will occur. The Library Maintenance program must be reloaded to continue.

#### **Removing Temporary Entries**

When a library is reorganized, its size is changed, or it is moved, all temporary entries in that library are deleted. This applies to both the source and object libraries.

#### **Library Restrictions**

The Allocate function cannot reference the libraries on the pack from which the Library Maintenance Program or the system was loaded. For example, if the system was loaded (IPL) from F1 and the Library Maintenance Program was loaded from R1, the source or object libraries on F1 and R1 cannot be referenced on an ALLOCATE statement.

#### **Moving the Object Library**

When creating or changing the size of the source library on a pack that contains an object library, the object library is moved and reorganized and all temporary entries are deleted.

#### **Control Statement Restrictions**

The SOURCE or OBJECT parameter must be specified in the ALLOCATE statement. If the SYSTEM or DIRSIZE parameter is specified, the OBJECT parameter must also be specified.

## Allocate Control Statement Summary

// ALLOCATE TO-code, SOURCE- $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{number} \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ , OBJECT- $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{number} \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ , SYSTEM- $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{NO} \\ \text{YES} \end{matrix} \right\}$ , DIRSIZE-number, WORK-code

	Use <b>1</b>	Parameter Needed <b>2</b>
Source Library	Create:	TO-code, SOURCE-number, WORK-code <b>3</b>
	Change Size:	TO-code, SOURCE-number, WORK-code
	Delete:	TO-code, SOURCE-0
	Reorganize:	TO-code, SOURCE-R, WORK-code
Object Library	Create:	TO-code, OBJECT-number, SYSTEM- $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{NO} \\ \text{YES} \end{matrix} \right\}$
	Change Size:	TO-code, OBJECT-number, WORK-code <b>4</b>
	Delete:	TO-code, OBJECT-0
	Reorganize:	TO-code, OBJECT-R, WORK-code <b>4</b>

- 1** You can indicate a source library use, any object library use, or uses involving both libraries (for example, deleting the source library and changing the size of the object library).
- 2** If you are indicating uses for both libraries, use only one TO parameter. (The libraries must be on the same disk.) Also, use only one WORK parameter if both uses require a WORK parameter.
- 3** The WORK parameter is needed only if the disk contains an object library that you are not deleting.
- 4** The WORK parameter is needed only if other functions are also being performed.

## Allocate Parameter Summary

Parameter	Meaning						
TO-code	Location of disk that contains or will contain the library. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, and F2						
SOURCE-number (no source library on disk)	Create a source library. Number indicates the number of tracks you want to assign.						
SOURCE-number (source library already on disk)	Delete or change the size of the source library. Use depends on number: <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;"><i>Number</i></th> <th style="text-align: left;"><i>Use</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Delete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Any number but zero</td> <td>Change size</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Use</i>	0	Delete	Any number but zero	Change size
<i>Number</i>	<i>Use</i>						
0	Delete						
Any number but zero	Change size						
SOURCE-R	Reorganize the source library.						
OBJECT-number (no object library on disk)	Create an object library. Number indicates the number of tracks you want to assign.						
OBJECT-number (object library already on disk)	Delete or change the size of the object library. Use depends on number: <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;"><i>Number</i></th> <th style="text-align: left;"><i>Use</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Delete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Any number but zero</td> <td>Change size</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Use</i>	0	Delete	Any number but zero	Change size
<i>Number</i>	<i>Use</i>						
0	Delete						
Any number but zero	Change size						
OBJECT-R	Reorganize the object library.						
DIRSIZE-number	Number of tracks you want for the directory when creating, reallocating, or reorganizing the object library.						
SYSTEM-NO	Do not create a scheduler work area. This will be a program pack.						
SYSTEM-YES	Create a scheduler work area. This will be a system pack.						
WORK-code	Location of disk containing space the program can use as a work area. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, or F2. Cannot be the same disk that was specified in the TO-code.						

## PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

### TO Parameter

The TO parameter (TO-code) indicates the location of the disk that contains, or will contain, the library. If the program use involves both libraries, the libraries must be on the same disk. The TO parameter cannot be the same unit from which the Library Maintenance program or the system was loaded.

Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

### SOURCE and OBJECT Parameters

The SOURCE and OBJECT parameters identify library uses:

Parameter	Use
SOURCE-number OBJECT-number (number is not zero)	If the disk contains no library, this parameter means create a library. Number is the number of tracks you want to assign to the library.
	If the disk contains a library, this parameter means change the library size. Number is the number of tracks you want to assign to the library.
SOURCE-0 } OBJECT-0 }	Delete the library.
SOURCE-R } OBJECT-R }	Reorganize the library.

### DIRSIZE Parameter

The DIRSIZE parameter allows the user to specify the size of the object library directory. The number of tracks specified (1-9) overrides the SYSTEM parameter in determining directory size. Each track can contain 288 directory entries. One entry is needed for the directory, so the formula for the number of entries in a directory is  $(t \times 288) - 1$ , where t is the number of tracks. If the DIRSIZE parameter is omitted, the SYSTEM parameter determines the directory size.

### SYSTEM Parameter

The SYSTEM parameter applies when creating, changing the size of, and reorganizing object libraries. It tells the program whether you intend to include system programs in the library and create a system pack that can be used to perform initial program load. If system programs are to be included, a scheduler work area must be assigned. See *Using the Copy function, Library to Library* for information about creating a system pack.

Space for the scheduler work area is assigned immediately preceding the object library. If the disk contains a source library, the work area is between the source and object libraries. For information about the size of the scheduler work area, see *Creating an Object Library* under *Using the Allocate Function*.

The following charts show the results of coding the SYSTEM parameter for different allocate uses.

#### Creating an Object Library

Parameter	Scheduler Work Area	Directory Size*
SYSTEM-YES	Created	Three Tracks
SYSTEM-NO	Not Created	One Track
not coded	Not Created	One Track

\* The directory size is overridden if the DIRSIZE parameter is used.

*Changing the Size or Reorganizing an Object Library on a Pack That Contains a Scheduler Work Area*

Parameter	Scheduler Work Area	Directory Size*
SYSTEM-YES	Retained	not changed
SYSTEM-NO	Removed	not changed
not coded	Retained	not changed

\*The directory size is overridden if the DIRSIZE parameter is coded.

*Changing the Size of or Reorganizing an Object Library on a Pack That Does Not Contain a Scheduler Work Area*

Parameter	Scheduler Work Area	Directory Size*
SYSTEM-YES	Created	not changed
SYSTEM-NO	Not Created	not changed
not coded	Not Created	not changed

\*The directory size is overridden if the DIRSIZE parameter is coded.

**WORK Parameter**

The WORK parameter (WORK-code) indicates the location of the disk that contains a work area. Library entries are temporarily stored in the work area while the program moves and reorganizes libraries.

Codes for the possible disk locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

When the WORK parameter is coded on an ALLOCATE statement, an additional allocation of disk space may result. (See index entry *Allocation of Disk Space*.)

*Size of the Work Area:* The work area must be large enough to hold the directory and the permanent entries of the source library, object library, or both libraries depending on the program use. If you are combining uses, such as changing the sizes of both libraries, the work area must be large enough to hold the contents of both libraries.

Use	Contents of Work Area
Create a source library (disk contains an object library).	Object library.
Change source library size (disk contains an object library).	Source library and object library.
Change source library size (disk doesn't contain an object library).	Source library.
Reorganize source library.	Source library.
Change object library size.	Object library (see <i>Compress in Place</i> ).
Reorganize object library.	Object library (see <i>Compress in Place</i> ).

**Location of Work Area on Disk:** The program uses the first available disk area large enough to hold the library, or libraries.

**Location of Disk Containing the Work Area:** The work area can be on either disk on either drive. However, it cannot be the same disk as the one you specified in the TO parameter. The only requirement is that the disk must have an available area large enough for the work area. If your system has two disk drives, the program works faster if the disk containing the libraries is on a different drive than the disk containing the work area.

**Using the Allocate Function**

**Creating a Source Library (SOURCE-number)**

**Source Library Size**

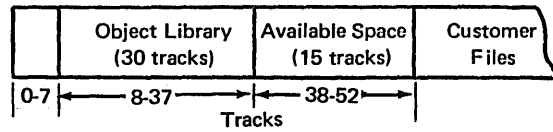
- Minimum: One track
- Maximum: Number of tracks in the available area
- Regardless of the number of tracks you specify, the first two sectors of the first track are assigned to the library directory. Additional sectors are used as needed for the directory.

**Placement of Source Library (Disk With an Object Library)**

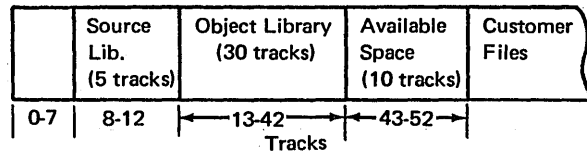
- The source library must immediately precede the object library. A disk area large enough for the source library must follow the object library because the program moves the object library to make room for the source library. To do this, the program needs a work area. (See *WORK Parameter.*) The object library is reorganized and all temporary entries are deleted.
- If you allocate a source library after deleting it, the program automatically moves the object library to make room for the source library. The starting location of the source library is the previous starting location of the object library.

**Placement of the Source Library (Disk Without an Object Library):** The program assigns the source library to the first available disk area large enough for the library. If you allocate a source library after deleting it, the source library is assigned the same way.

**Disk Space before creating the Source Library:**



**Disk Space after creating the Source Library:**



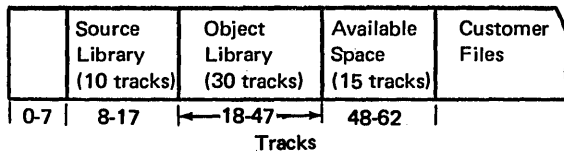
**Changing the Size of (Reallocating) a Source Library (SOURCE-number)**

Any time the program changes the source library size, it reorganizes both the source and object libraries and deletes all temporary entries. (See *Reorganizing a Source Library.*) To do this, it needs a work area. (See *WORK Parameter.*)

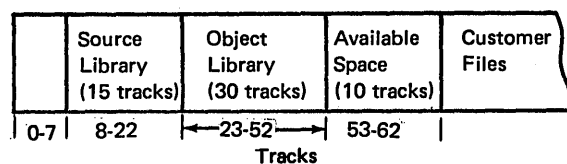
**Making the Source Library Larger**

- If the disk contains an object library, space must be available immediately following the object library. The program moves the object library to make tracks available at the end of the source library.
- If the disk does not contain an object library, space must be available immediately following the source library.

**Disk Before Tracks Are Added to Source Library:**



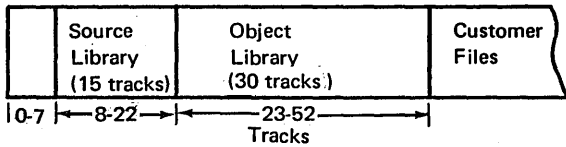
**Disk After Five Tracks Are Added to Source Library:**



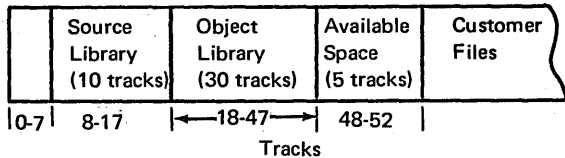
**Making the Source Library Smaller**

- o If the disk contains an object library, the program moves the end location of the source library to make the library smaller. The object library is moved and space becomes available following the object library.
- o If the disk does not contain an object library, the program moves the end location of the source library to make the source library smaller.

Disk Before Source-Library Size Was Decreased:



Disk After Five Tracks Were Taken From Source Library:

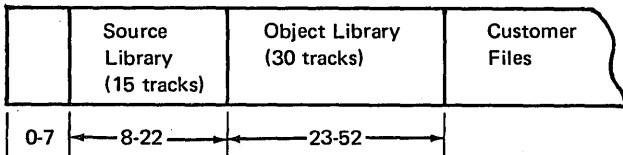


**Deleting a Source Library (SOURCE-0)**

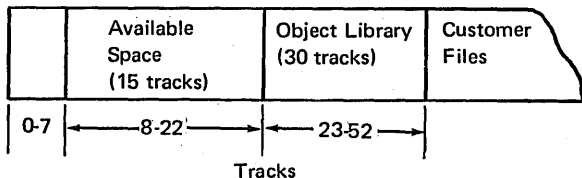
The program makes the disk area occupied by the source library available for other use (disk files). The starting location of the library is moved to the start of the object library.

If you try to reinstate a source library, the program checks to make sure there is enough space to contain the combined source and object libraries (the check begins at the starting location of the library).

Disk Before Source Library Deleted

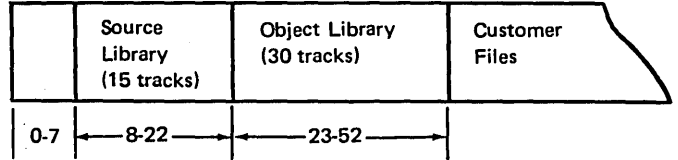


Disk After Source Library Deleted (SOURCE-0 only)

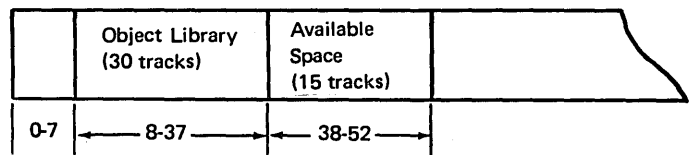


To retain the deleted space for library usage, the additional parameter OBJECT-R may be used with SOURCE-0 on the same allocate statement. As a result the starting location of the library will remain the same.

Disk Before Source Library Deleted



Disk After Source Library Deleted With Object Library Reorganized (SOURCE-0 with OBJECT-R)



**Reorganizing a Source Library (SOURCE-R)**

**Reason for Reorganizing the Library:** Areas from which source library entries (procedures or source) are deleted are completely reused for new entries. If an entry exceeds the space in such an area, the program puts as much of the entry as will fit in the area and continues the entry in the next available area. In this way, the program efficiently uses library space. This can, however, decrease the speed at which those entries can be read from the library. Therefore, if you frequently add and delete source library entries, you should reorganize your source library periodically.

**Reorganizing the Library:** The program relocates entries so that no entry is started in one area and continued in another. All temporary entries are deleted. The program needs a work area. (See WORK Parameter.)

**Creating an Object Library (OBJECT-number)**

**Object Library Size**

- o Minimum: Three tracks, including the directory tracks.
- o Maximum: Number of tracks in available area.
- o Library Directory: The first three tracks in the library are reserved for the library directory if the library is to contain system programs; otherwise, only the first track is used. If the DIRSIZE parameter is entered, the directory size specified is used.

- **Scheduler Work Area:** The scheduler is a component of the System/3 SCP that reads and processes OCL statements. It uses a work area on disk, called the scheduler work area (SWA), to temporarily save OCL file label information during the processing of a program. The area is allocated when SYSTEM-YES is specified. The work space is not included in the number you specify in the OBJECT parameter; the space is calculated and assigned by the Library Maintenance program. The amount of space needed depends on whether the inquiry capability is generated in the supervisor. All systems require two tracks, the inquiry feature requires additional tracks for a Roll-in/Roll-out area. The number of tracks needed depends on the main storage size of the system.

Main Storage Size	Roll-in/Roll-out Tracks
8K	4
12K	4
16K	5
24K	6
32K	8

The SWA contains disk pack usage information, F1 and F7 label information, an initiator table, utility control card area, and miscellaneous work areas. (See *Maximum Number of Files in SWA.*)

*Placement of Object Library (Disk With a Source Library):* Space for the object library must be available immediately following the source library.

*Placement of Object Library (Disk Without a Source Library):* The program assigns the object library to the first available disk area that is large enough.

*Changing the Size of (Reallocating) an Object Library (OBJECT-number)*

*Making the Library Larger:* The number of tracks you want to add must be available immediately following the object library. The program assigns the additional tracks to the library. (The starting location of the library remains unchanged.)

*Making the Library Smaller:* The program moves the end location of the object library to decrease the library size. Tracks, therefore, become available following the library.

*Reorganizing the Library:* Any time the program changes the library size, it also reorganizes the library and deletes all temporary entries. (See *Reorganizing an Object Library.*) If other functions are also being performed with the reorganization, the program needs a work area. (See *WORK Parameter.*) If not, a work area is not used. (See *Compress in Place.*)

*Deleting an Object Library (OBJECT-0)*

The program makes the disk area occupied by the object library (and the scheduler work area if this was a system pack) available for other use.

*Reorganizing an Object Library (OBJECT-R)*

Gaps can occur between object library entries when you add and delete entries. By reorganizing the library, these gaps are removed. When the library is reorganized, all temporary entries are deleted. If other functions are also being performed with the reorganization, the program needs a work area. (See *WORK Parameter.*) If not, a work area is not used. (See *Compress in Place.*)

**Compress in Place (OBJECT- $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} R \\ \text{Number} \end{array} \right\}$ )**

If the object library is being reorganized or the size of the object library is being changed and no other functions are being performed, the object library is compressed in place. This means that the library is reorganized with all gaps removed and all temporary entries are deleted without using a work area. The WORK parameter is ignored if it is supplied.

A work area is needed if a source library function is being performed or if the directory size (DIRSIZE parameter) or the pack type (SYSTEM parameter) is being changed in conjunction with an object library function.

Compress in place allows the user with a single-spindle or half capacity system to reorganize the object library.



## **COPY**

The copy function of the Library Maintenance program allows you to copy:

*Reader-to-Library:* Add or replace a library entry. The reader is the system input device.

*File-to-Library:* Add or replace one or more library entries. A 5444 disk file is the input.

### *Library-to-Library*

- Copy one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
- Copy library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
- Copy all library entries.
- Copy minimum system.

### *Library-to-Printer*

- Print one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
- Print library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
- Print all library entries of a certain type.
- Print directory entries for library entries of a certain type.
- Print entries from all directories including the system directory.
- Print system directory only.

### Library-to-Card

- Punch one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
- Punch library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
- Punch all library entries of a certain type.

### Library-to-Printer And Card

- Print and punch one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
- Print and punch library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
- Print and punch all temporary or permanent library entries of a certain type.

Copying a library entry involves:

- Identifying the location of an entry.
- Identifying an entry.
- Removing and reinserting blanks and duplicate characters.

*Identifying the Location of an Entry.* An entry can be read from the system input device, a file or from disk. It can be copied to disk, printer, or cards.

*Identifying an Entry.* Entries are identified by their type and name. Entries that can be copied include source library and object library entries. A name identifies specific entries within the library. You can also further identify an entry by designating whether it is temporary or permanent. This allows the program to make a check before replacing an entry.

*Removing and Reinserting Blanks and Duplicate Characters.* Before source statements or procedures are put in the source library, blanks and duplicate characters are removed to save space. When the source statements or procedures are used blanks and duplicate characters are reinserted.

### COPY Control Statement Summary: Reader-To-Library

**Add or Replace a Library Entry**

```
// COPY FROM-READER,LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ NAME-name,  
  
TO-code,RETAIN- $\left. \begin{matrix} I \\ P \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ 
```

*Library Entry:*

```
// CEND
```

*Note:* /\* or /& statements cannot be present in the entries being copied into the libraries.

### COPY Control Statement Summary: File-To-Library

**Add or Replace One or More Library Entries**

```
// COPY FROM-DISK,FILE-filename,RECL- $\left. \begin{matrix} 80 \\ 96 \end{matrix} \right\}$   
  
TO-code,RETAIN- $\left. \begin{matrix} R \\ P \end{matrix} \right\}$ 
```

*Example of data in disk file:*

```
// COPY FROM-READER,LIBRARY-O,RETAIN-P,  
NAME-DECK01 1  
-  
-  
load module  
-  
-  
// CEND  
  
// COPY LIBRARY-S,NAME-DECK02 1  
-  
-  
source module  
-  
-  
// CEND  
// END 2
```

1 Only the LIBRARY and NAME parameters are required. Other parameters are ignored.

2 The // END statement read from the file is optional. It causes the next statement to be read from the system input device or procedure. A // END statement must still be read from the system input device or procedure to indicate the end of the Library Maintenance control statements.

## COPY Control Statement Summary: Library-To-Library

### Copy One Library Entry (or Entries with the Same Name from All Libraries)

```
// COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{array}{c} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{array} \right\}$ , NAME-name, TO-code, RETAIN- $\left. \begin{array}{c} I \\ P \\ R \end{array} \right\}$ , NEWNAME-name 1
```

### Copy Library Entries that Have Names Beginning with Certain Characters

```
// COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{array}{c} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{array} \right\}$ , NAME-characters.ALL, TO-code, RETAIN- $\left. \begin{array}{c} I \\ P \\ R \end{array} \right\}$ , NEWNAME-characters 1
```

### Copy All Library Entries

```
// COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{array}{c} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{array} \right\}$ , NAME-ALL, TO-code, RETAIN- $\left. \begin{array}{c} I \\ P \\ R \end{array} \right\}$  2
```

### Copy Minimum System

```
// COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-O, NAME-SYSTEM, TO-code 2
```

- 1** NEWNAME parameter is needed in any of the following cases:
1. If you want the copy to have a different name than the original entry.
  2. If you want to replace an entry on the TO disk with an entry from the FROM disk, but the entries have different names.
  3. If you want the names of the copies to begin with different characters than the names of the original entries, the same number of characters must be in the NEWNAME parameter as in the NAME parameter.
  4. If the FROM and TO units are the same.
- Note:* NEWNAME cannot be DIR, ALL, or SYSTEM.
- 2** The FROM and TO parameters cannot be the same.

## COPY Control Statement Summary: Library-To-Printer And/or Card

Print And/or Punch One Library Entry (or Entries with the Same Name from All Libraries)

$$// \text{ COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \text{P} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{R} \\ \text{ALL} \end{array} \right\} \text{,NAME-name,TO-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{PUNCH} \\ \text{PRINT} \\ \text{PRT PCH} \end{array} \right\}$$

Print And/or Punch Temporary and Permanent Library Entries that Have Names Beginning with Certain Characters

$$// \text{ COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \text{P} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{R} \\ \text{ALL} \end{array} \right\} \text{,NAME-characters.ALL,TO-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{PUNCH} \\ \text{PRINT} \\ \text{PRT PCH} \end{array} \right\}$$

Print And/or Punch All Temporary and Permanent Library Entries of a Certain Type

$$// \text{ COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \text{P} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \right\} \text{,NAME-ALL, TO-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{PUNCH} \\ \text{PRINT} \\ \text{PRT PCH} \end{array} \right\}$$

Print Directory Entries for Library Entries of a Certain Type

$$// \text{ COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \text{P} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \right\} \text{,NAME-DIR,TO-PRINT}$$

Print Entries from All Directories Including System Directory

// COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-ALL, NAME-DIR, TO-PRINT

Print System Directory Entries Only

// COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-SYSTEM, NAME-DIR, TO-PRINT

Print Directory Entries, Omitting Selected Entries

$$// \text{ COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \text{P} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{R} \\ \text{ALL} \end{array} \right\} \text{,NAME-DIR,TO-PRINT,OMIT-} \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{name} \\ \text{characters.ALL} \end{array} \right\}$$

## Copy Parameters

Parameter	Meaning										
FROM-READER	Entry to be placed in library is to be read from system input device.										
FROM-code	Location of disk containing library entries being copied, printed, or punched. Possible location codes are: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>R1</td> <td>Removable disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F1</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R2</td> <td>Removable disk on drive two</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F2</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive two</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	R1	Removable disk on drive one	F1	Fixed disk on drive one	R2	Removable disk on drive two	F2	Fixed disk on drive two
Code	Meaning										
R1	Removable disk on drive one										
F1	Fixed disk on drive one										
R2	Removable disk on drive two										
F2	Fixed disk on drive two										
FROM-DISK	The entry or entries to be placed into a library or libraries reside in a 5444 disk file. The disk file must be described by an OCL FILE statement.										
FILE-filename	For a file-to-library copy, this parameter is needed to identify the file on disk. The filename must match the filename on the OCL FILE statement.										
RECL- $\left. \begin{matrix} 80 \\ 96 \end{matrix} \right\}$	For a file-to-library copy, this parameter gives the size of the disk records. Only 80 or 96 column card image records are allowed. If this parameter is omitted, 96 is assumed.										
LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$	Type of library entries involved in copy use. Possible codes are: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>S</td> <td>Source statements (source library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P</td> <td>OCL procedure (source library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>O</td> <td>Object programs (object library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R</td> <td>Routines (object library)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	S	Source statements (source library)	P	OCL procedure (source library)	O	Object programs (object library)	R	Routines (object library)
Code	Meaning										
S	Source statements (source library)										
P	OCL procedure (source library)										
O	Object programs (object library)										
R	Routines (object library)										
LIBRARY-ALL	All types of entries (S, P, O, and R) from both libraries are involved in copy use.										
LIBRARY-SYSTEM	Only system directory entries are being printed.										
NAME- $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{name} \\ \text{characters.ALL} \\ \text{ALL} \end{matrix} \right\}$	Specific library entries on the FROM pack, of the type indicated in LIBRARY parameter, involved in copy use. Possible information is: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Information</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>name</td> <td>Name of the library entry involved.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>characters.ALL</td> <td>Only those entries beginning with the indicated characters. For example, \$MA.ALL means the Library Maintenance program (\$MAINT).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ALL</td> <td>All entries. (The type indicated in LIBRARY parameter.)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Information	Meaning	name	Name of the library entry involved.	characters.ALL	Only those entries beginning with the indicated characters. For example, \$MA.ALL means the Library Maintenance program (\$MAINT).	ALL	All entries. (The type indicated in LIBRARY parameter.)		
Information	Meaning										
name	Name of the library entry involved.										
characters.ALL	Only those entries beginning with the indicated characters. For example, \$MA.ALL means the Library Maintenance program (\$MAINT).										
ALL	All entries. (The type indicated in LIBRARY parameter.)										

Parameter	Meaning														
NAME-SYSTEM	System programs that make up the minimum system and IPL information contained on cylinder 0 are copied. The minimum system is made up of system programs necessary to load and run programs. System programs necessary to generate and maintain the system such as utilities are not included in the minimum system.														
NAME-DIR	Directory entries for all library entries of the type indicated in the LIBRARY parameter are involved in the copy use. If the LIBRARY parameter is LIBRARY-ALL, system directory entries are also printed.														
RETAIN- $\left. \begin{matrix} T \\ P \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$	<p><i>Adding Entry to Library.</i> RETAIN gives designation of the TO entry:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>T</td> <td>Temporary</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P or R</td> <td>Permanent</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><i>Replacing Existing Library Entry.</i> RETAIN gives designation of the TO entry and tells program whether to halt before replacing entry:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>T</td> <td>Temporary designation. Halt before replacing entry.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P</td> <td>Permanent designation. Halt before replacing entry.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R</td> <td>Permanent designation. Do not halt before replacing entry.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><i>Printing or Punching Entries.</i> The RETAIN parameter is ignored.</p>	Code	Meaning	T	Temporary	P or R	Permanent	Code	Meaning	T	Temporary designation. Halt before replacing entry.	P	Permanent designation. Halt before replacing entry.	R	Permanent designation. Do not halt before replacing entry.
Code	Meaning														
T	Temporary														
P or R	Permanent														
Code	Meaning														
T	Temporary designation. Halt before replacing entry.														
P	Permanent designation. Halt before replacing entry.														
R	Permanent designation. Do not halt before replacing entry.														
TO-code	<p>Location of disk that is to contain the copies of the entries:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>R1</td> <td>Removable disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F1</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R2</td> <td>Removable disk on drive two</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F2</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive two</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	R1	Removable disk on drive one	F1	Fixed disk on drive one	R2	Removable disk on drive two	F2	Fixed disk on drive two				
Code	Meaning														
R1	Removable disk on drive one														
F1	Fixed disk on drive one														
R2	Removable disk on drive two														
F2	Fixed disk on drive two														
TO-PRINT	Entries are being printed.														
TO-PUNCH	Entries are being punched.														
TO-PRTPCH	Entries are being printed and punched.														
NEWNAME-name	Name you want used on the TO disk to identify the entries being put on that disk. If you omit this parameter, the program uses the NAME parameter in naming the entries.														
NEWNAME-characters	Beginning characters you want to use in names identifying entries being put on TO disk. You must use the same number of characters as in the NAME parameter (NAME-characters.ALL). If you omit this parameter, the program uses the NAME parameter in naming the entries.														
OMIT-name	When printing directory entries, omit the entry specified by <i>name</i> .														
OMIT-characters.ALL	When printing directory entries, omit all entries with these beginning characters.														

## Using the Copy Function

### *Library Directories*

#### *Source and Object Library Directories*

- The source and object libraries have separate library directories. Every library entry has a corresponding entry in its library directory. The directory entry contains such information as the name and location of the library entry. (See *Printout of Directory Entries*.)
- The Library Maintenance program makes entries in the directories when it puts entries in the libraries.

#### *System Directory*

- Every disk that contains libraries contains a system directory. The system directory contains information about the sizes of and available space in libraries and their directories. (See *Printout of Directory Entries*.)
- The Library Maintenance program creates and maintains the system directory.

### *Naming Library Entries*

**Characters to Use:** Use any combination of System/3 characters except blanks, commas, quotes, and periods. (Appendix A lists the characters.) The names of most IBM programs begin with a dollar sign (\$). Therefore, to avoid possible duplication, do not use a dollar sign as the first character in the names you use for your entries. The first character must be alphabetic.

**Length of Name:** The name can be from one to six characters long.

**Restricted Names:** Do not use the names ALL, DIR, and SYSTEM. They have special meanings in the NAME and NEWNAME parameters.

**Entries with the Same Name:** For each of the two physical libraries, source and object, there are two types of entries. The source library has type P and type S entries. The object library has type O and type R entries. Entries of the same type cannot have the same name, but entries of different types may. For example, two procedures in source library cannot have the same name, but a procedure and a set of source statements can.

### *Retain Types*

#### *Temporary Entries*

- Temporary entries are entries you do not intend to keep in your libraries. They are normally used only once or a few times over a short period.
- In the object library, temporary entries are placed together following the permanent entries. Any time a permanent entry is added to the library, all temporary entries are deleted. Temporary entries are also deleted when you replace one permanent entry with another.
- In the source library, temporary and permanent entries can be in any order. One entry is placed after another regardless of their designations. Temporary entries, therefore, are not automatically deleted every time you add a permanent entry. However, when the source library is reallocated or reorganized, only permanent entries will remain.
- You can use temporary entries as often as you like until they are deleted.
- A temporary entry cannot replace a permanent entry.

#### *Permanent Entries*

- Permanent entries are entries you intend to keep in your libraries. They are normally entries you use often or at regular intervals (once a week, once a month, and so on).
- The program will not delete permanent entries unless you use the delete function of Library Maintenance to delete them, or the allocate function to delete the entire library.

### *Reader-to-Library*

*Input:* The program reads one library entry. It can be any one of the following types:

1. Source statements
2. Procedure
3. Object program
4. Routine

The entry is read from the system input device, which is normally the keyboard. The operator can, however, change the system input device by using the OCL **READER** statement.

The header card on an object deck (H in column 1) contains the date the deck was punched. This date is in columns 58-63 and is in the format of the system date, either mmddyy or ddmmyy.

### *Output*

- Blanks and duplicate characters are removed from source statements and procedures before they are put in the source library. The program does not check them for errors.
- Object programs and routines are placed in the object library after sequence and checksum information is removed.

*Adding Entries:* The program can add a new entry to a library. The name of the entry is taken from the **NAME** parameter. See *Naming Library Entries* for valid names. The **RETAIN** parameter specifies whether the entry will be temporary or permanent. If the **RETAIN** parameter is omitted, **RETAIN-T** is assumed (see *Retain Types*).

### *Replacing Existing Entries*

- The program can replace an existing library entry with the entry you are putting in the library. The **RETAIN** parameter specifies the new retain type. If the **RETAIN** parameter is omitted, **RETAIN-T** is assumed. A temporary entry cannot replace a permanent entry.
- The program can halt before replacing an existing entry. Whether it does depends on the **RETAIN** parameter you use. (See **RETAIN** parameter.)

- Before the new entry is added, the duplicate entry is deleted. Additional library space is not needed unless the new entry is larger than the old one.

### *File-to-Library*

*Input:* The disk file can contain one or more library entries. The entries must be in the format put out by the library-to-card function or by the linkage editor. The **// COPY** statement at the beginning of each entry contains the name of the entry and the type of library (S, P, O, R). A **// CEND** statement must follow each entry in the file.

The disk file must be a sequential 5444 file and be defined by a **FILE** statement in the OCL for the Library Maintenance program. Multivolume files are not supported.

*Output:* The output from the file-to-library function is the same as for the reader-to-library function except that temporary entries are not allowed.

### *Library-to-Library*

*Input:* The program can copy one or more library entries from one disk to another. The types of entries can be:

1. Source statements
2. Procedures
3. Object programs
4. Routines
5. All the preceding types
6. Minimum system

The **NAME** and **LIBRARY** parameters specify which entries to copy.

### *Output*

- The entries, regardless of their type, are copied from one disk to the other without change.
- Entries can be copied and renamed on the same disk by using the **NEWNAME** parameter. (See **NEWNAME** parameter and *Naming Library Entries*.)



- Copying a minimum system (LIBRARY-O, NAME-SYSTEM) or all of the types (LIBRARY-ALL, NAME-ALL) are the functions used to create a system pack that can be used to perform initial program load (Copying LIBRARY-ALL, NAME-ALL will create a system pack only if the FROM pack is a system pack.) Because of this use, the object library on the disk you specify in the TO parameter must be empty (it cannot contain any entries or deleted entries). Also the object library on the TO pack must have been allocated with a scheduler work area and a roll-in/roll-out area at least as large as those on the FROM pack.
- The RETAIN parameter specifies whether the entries will be temporary or permanent. If the RETAIN parameter is omitted, RETAIN-T is assumed. When the parameters LIBRARY-ALL and NAME-ALL or LIBRARY-O and NAME-SYSTEM are used, RETAIN-P is assumed and RETAIN-T is invalid.

#### *Adding Entries*

- You can omit the NEWNAME parameter. If you do, the name used for the copy is taken from the NAME parameter. (The copy will have the same name as the original entry.)
- If NAME-ALL is specified, the names by which the entries are identified on the FROM disk are also used on the TO disk to identify the entries.

#### *Replacing Existing Entries*

- The program can replace existing entries with the entries you are putting in the library. If the entry you are copying (the entry on the disk you identify in the FROM parameter) has the same name as the entry you are replacing (the entry on the disk you identify in the TO parameter), you must omit the NEWNAME parameter because the NEWNAME parameter cannot be the same as the NAME parameter. If the names are not the same, you must use the NEWNAME parameter to give the name of the entry being replaced.
- The program can halt before replacing an existing entry. Whether it does depends on the RETAIN parameter (see *RETAIN Parameter*).
- A temporary entry cannot replace a permanent entry.

#### *Library-to-Printer and/or Card*

##### *Types of Entries that Can Be Printed or Punched*

- The program can print or punch one or more library entries. They can be any one of the following types:
  1. Source statements
  2. Procedures
  3. Object programs
  4. Routines
  5. All of the preceding types (limited to entries having the same name and entries beginning with the same characters).
- The program can print (but not punch) the following types of directory entries:
  1. Source statements
  2. Procedures
  3. Object programs
  4. Routines
  5. System directory
  6. All of the preceding types

The program will sort directory names before printing them only if there is available work space on the FROM pack. This causes an allocation of disk space that counts toward the total of four allowable allocations. (See *Index Entry Allocation of Disk Space*.)

### *Printed or Punched Library Entries*

- Blanks and duplicate characters are re-inserted into source statements and procedures to make them readable.
- Object programs and routines are printed and punched after sequence information and checksum information (punch only) has been added.
- The library entries, when punched, are preceded by a `// COPY` statement of the reader-to-library format and followed by a `// CEND` statement.

### *Printout of Directory Entries*

- The format of the system directory is shown under *Sample System Directory Printout*. If there is no source library on the pack, the message **NO SOURCE LIBRARY EXISTS ON THIS PACK** is logged. If there is no object library on the pack, the message **NO OBJECT LIBRARY EXISTS ON THIS PACK** is logged.
- The format of the source library directory printout is shown under *Source Library Directory*. If there is no source library on the pack, the message **NO SOURCE LIBRARY EXISTS** is logged. If a source library exists but is empty, the message **NO SOURCE DIR ENTRIES EXIST** is logged.
- The format of the object library directory printout is shown under *Object Library Directory*. If there is no object library on the pack, the message **NO OBJECT LIBRARY EXISTS** is logged. If an object library exists but is empty, the message **NO OBJECT DIR ENTRIES EXIST** is logged.

Sample System Directory Printout

SYSTEM DIRECTORY FROM R1 VOLUME ID R1R1R1 10/20/73

SOURCE LIBRARY SECTION

SOURCE DIRECTORY LOCATION	008-00
NEXT AVAILABLE LIBRARY SECTOR	036-23
END OF LIBRARY	047-23
NUMBER OF DIRECTORY SECTORS	7
NUMBER OF PERMANENT LIBRARY SECTORS	680
NUMBER OF ACTIVE LIBRARY SECTORS	688
NUMBER OF AVAILABLE LIBRARY SECTORS	265
ALLOCATED SIZE OF LIBRARY	40

OBJECT LIBRARY SECTION

OBJECT DIRECTORY LOCATION	055-00
ALLOCATED SIZE OF DIRECTORY	6
START OF LIBRARY	061-00
ALLOCATED END OF LIBRARY	379-23
EXTENDED END OF LIBRARY	379-23
NUMBER OF AVAILABLE PERMANENT DIRECTORY ENTRIES	732
NUMBER OF AVAILABLE TEMPORARY DIRECTORY ENTRIES	697
FIRST TEMPORARY DIRECTORY ENTRY	058-10-231
NEXT AVAILABLE TEMPORARY DIRECTORY ENTRY	058-13-210
NEXT AVAILABLE LIBRARY SECTOR FOR PERMANENTS	288-09
NEXT AVAILABLE LIBRARY SECTOR FOR TEMPORARIES	296-21
NUMBER OF AVAILABLE LIBRARY SECTORS FOR PERMANENTS	2199
NUMBER OF AVAILABLE LIBRARY SECTORS FOR TEMPORARIES	1995
NUMBER OF ACTIVE LIBRARY SECTORS	5495
NUMBER OF ACTIVE OBJECT PERMANENT LIBRARY SECTORS	4693
NUMBER OF ACTIVE ROUTINE PERMANENT LIBRARY SECTORS	598
ALLOCATED SIZE OF LIBRARY	325
ROLL-IN/ROLL-OUT LOCATION	050-00
ROLL-IN/ROLL-OUT SIZE	5
SCHEDULER WORK AREA LOCATION	048-00
SCHEDULER WORK AREA SIZE	7
START OF LIBRARIES	008-00
END OF LIBRARIES	379-23

**Using the System Directory to Determine if the Object Library Should Be Reorganized**

The following are *not* updated when an object library entry is deleted:

- Number of available directory entries
- Next available directory entry
- Next available library sector
- Number of available library sectors

These reflect only contiguous space which can be used, therefore, gaps are not included. (See *Organization of Library Entries, Object Library.*)

To calculate the total number of sectors that could be made available for permanent entries if the object library is reorganized, perform the following procedure (Take values from *Sample System Directory Printout*):

1. Determine the object library size in sectors

Allocated size of library	=	325
Allocated size of directory	=	- 6
Object library size (tracks)	=	<u>319</u>
		x 24
Object library size (sectors)	=	7656

2. Determine the number of permanent object library sectors

Number of active object permanent library sectors	=	4693
Number of active routine permanent library sectors	=	<u>+598</u>
Number of permanent object library sectors	=	5291

3. Determine the number of contiguous sectors that will be available at the end of the library if the library is reorganized to remove all gaps and temporary library entries.

Object library size (sectors) from step 1	=	7656
Number of permanent object library sectors from step 2	=	<u>-5291</u>
Number of available sectors	=	2365

4. Compare the number of available sectors calculated to the number of available library sectors for permanents.

Number of available sectors from step 3	=	2365
Number of available library sectors for permanents	=	<u>-2199</u>
Difference in sectors	=	166

The difference (166) represents the amount of contiguous space that can be gained by reorganizing the object library.

**Source Library Directory**

*Printout*

SOURCE DIRECTORY FROM XX VOL ID XXXXXX MM/DD/YY

TYPE	NAME	ADDRESS		ATTRI	#SECTORS
		FIRST@	LAST@		
X	XXXXXX	TTT-SS	TTT-SS	X	XXXX

*Explanation*

Heading	Meaning
TYPE	S=source statements P=procedure
NAME	Name of library entry (up to six characters)
ADDRESS (FIRST and LAST)	Addresses of first and last sectors that contain the library entry. Addresses are expressed by track and sector numbers. EXAMPLE: 008-03 means track 8, sector 3.
ATTRI (Attribute)	T=temporary P=permanent
#SECTORS	Total number of sectors used for the library entry.

## Object Library Directory

### Printout

```

OBJECT LIBRARY FROM XX   VOL. ID XXXXXX   MM/DD/YY

TYPE   NAME   DISK   CYL/   TXT-   LINK   RLD   ENTRY   CORE   ATTR   LEVEL   TOT
X X   XXXXXX   ADD   SEC   CAT   ADDR   DISP   PNT   SEC   XXXX   XXX   SEC
      TTT/SS  CC/SS  XXX  XXXX  XX   XXXX  XXX  XXXX  XXX  XXXX
  
```

### Explanation

Heading	Meaning
TYPE	<p>The first character printed indicates the attributes of the entry as follows:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">P = permanent T = temporary</p> <p>The second character printed indicates the type of module the entry is. Its meaning is as follows:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">O = object program R = routine</p>
NAME	Name of library entry (up to six characters)
DISK ADD	Address where library entry begins on disk. EXAMPLE: 015/10 means track 15, sector 10 (in decimal). T = track, S = sector.
CYL/SEC	Address where library entry begins on disk (in hexadecimal). C = cylinder, S = sector.
TXT-CAT	<p>For object programs, this number indicates the number of sectors used for the text portion of the library entry. Object programs consist of two parts: text and RLD. Text is the program or routine instructions. RLD is information used in loading the program for execution.</p> <p>For routines, this number is the category of the routine. This number is used by the Overlay Linkage Editor for determining overlays.</p>
LINK ADDR	Object programs only. Assigned hexadecimal core address of this library entry.
RLD DISP	Object programs only. It indicates the hexadecimal position in which RLD information begins in the last text sector. If the last text sector contains no RLD information, the RLD displacement is 0, indicating the information starts in the next sector.
ENTRY PNT	Object programs only. Main storage address (hexadecimal) where program execution begins before relocations.
CORE SEC	Core size given in sectors, required to run the program.

**Heading****Meaning**

ATTR

Byte 1:

Bit 0=1—Permanent entry

Bit 0=0—Temporary entry

Bit 1=1—Inquiry. This program requires that the Inquiry switch be operated to start processing.

Bit 2=1—Inquiry invoking. This program runs in program level 1 and can be rolled out to allow an Inquiry program to run.

Bit 3 Reserved

Bit 4=1—Source required. This program requires the allocation of the \$WORK and \$SOURCE files. \$SOURCE must be filled either from the system input device or a source library.

Bit 5=1—Deferred mount. This program accepts mounting of packs during its execution.

Bit 6=1—PTF applied. A program temporary fix (PTF) has been applied to this program.

Bit 7=1—Overlay object program

Byte 2:

Bit 0=1—System Input dedication. The system input device must be dedicated to this program. The device is released when no longer needed.

Bit 1 Reserved

Bit 2=1—Direct source read. This program can have a COMPILE statement and a no-source-required attribute (byte 1, bit 4=0). The program will access the source itself.

Bit 3-4 Reserved

Bit 5=1—Program common. This program requires that a new load address be calculated at load time to place it in main storage beyond its own program common region.

Bits 6-7 Reserved

LEVEL

Release level of system programs. For user programs this can be assigned in the Overlay Linkage Editor

TOT SEC

Total number of disk sectors occupied by the library entry

## DELETE

### Uses

- Delete a temporary or permanent entry from a library (or entries with the same name from all libraries).
- Delete temporary or permanent entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
- Delete all temporary or permanent entries of a certain type.

### Delete Considerations and Restrictions

The following apply to the delete function:

- System modules cannot be deleted from the active system pack (the pack the system was loaded from during IPL).
- When all temporary entries are deleted from the object library using LIBRARY-O,NAME-ALL,RETAIN-T, the temporary routines (LIBRARY-R) are also deleted.
- The RETAIN parameter must match the attribute of the entry in the library otherwise the entry is considered not found. RETAIN-T is assumed if the RETAIN parameter is omitted.
- Library Maintenance modules cannot be deleted from the active program pack.

### Control Statement Summary

Delete a Temporary or Permanent Library Entry (or Entries with the Same Name from All Libraries)

```
// DELETE FROM-code,LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,NAME-name,RETAIN- $\left\{ \begin{matrix} T \\ P \end{matrix} \right\}$ 
```

Delete Temporary or Permanent Entries With Names Beginning With Certain Characters

```
// DELETE FROM-code,LIBRARY- $\left\{ \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,NAME-characters.ALL,RETAIN- $\left\{ \begin{matrix} T \\ P \end{matrix} \right\}$ 
```

Delete All Temporary or Permanent Entries of a Certain Type

```
// DELETE FROM-code,LIBRARY- $\left\{ \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,NAME-ALL,RETAIN- $\left\{ \begin{matrix} T \\ P \end{matrix} \right\}$ 
```



## Delete Parameters

Parameter	Meaning												
FROM- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} R1 \\ F1 \\ R2 \\ F2 \end{array} \right\}$	<p>Location of disk that contains library entries you are deleting. Possible codes are:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>R1</td> <td>Removable disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F1</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R2</td> <td>Removable disk on drive two</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F2</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive two.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	R1	Removable disk on drive one	F1	Fixed disk on drive one	R2	Removable disk on drive two	F2	Fixed disk on drive two.		
Code	Meaning												
R1	Removable disk on drive one												
F1	Fixed disk on drive one												
R2	Removable disk on drive two												
F2	Fixed disk on drive two.												
LIBRARY- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{array} \right\}$	<p>Type of entries being deleted. Possible codes are:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>S</td> <td>Source statements (source library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P</td> <td>Procedures (source library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>O</td> <td>Object programs (object library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R</td> <td>Routines (object library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ALL</td> <td>All types of entries (S, P, O, and R) are being deleted.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	S	Source statements (source library)	P	Procedures (source library)	O	Object programs (object library)	R	Routines (object library)	ALL	All types of entries (S, P, O, and R) are being deleted.
Code	Meaning												
S	Source statements (source library)												
P	Procedures (source library)												
O	Object programs (object library)												
R	Routines (object library)												
ALL	All types of entries (S, P, O, and R) are being deleted.												
NAME- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{name} \\ \text{characters.ALL} \\ ALL \end{array} \right\}$	<p>Particular entries, of type indicated in LIBRARY parameter, being deleted. These entries are further identified by the RETAIN parameter. Possible codes are:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>name</td> <td>Name of the library entry, or entries, being deleted.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>characters.ALL</td> <td>Entries that have names beginning with the indicated characters. You can use up to five characters. EXAMPLE: NAME-INV.ALL refers to the entries having names that begin with INV.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ALL</td> <td>All entries (of the type indicated in LIBRARY parameter). NAME-ALL cannot be used with LIBRARY-ALL.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	name	Name of the library entry, or entries, being deleted.	characters.ALL	Entries that have names beginning with the indicated characters. You can use up to five characters. EXAMPLE: NAME-INV.ALL refers to the entries having names that begin with INV.	ALL	All entries (of the type indicated in LIBRARY parameter). NAME-ALL cannot be used with LIBRARY-ALL.				
Code	Meaning												
name	Name of the library entry, or entries, being deleted.												
characters.ALL	Entries that have names beginning with the indicated characters. You can use up to five characters. EXAMPLE: NAME-INV.ALL refers to the entries having names that begin with INV.												
ALL	All entries (of the type indicated in LIBRARY parameter). NAME-ALL cannot be used with LIBRARY-ALL.												
RETAIN- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} T \\ P \end{array} \right\}$	<p>Designation of entries being deleted:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>T</td> <td>Temporary</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P</td> <td>Permanent</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	T	Temporary	P	Permanent						
Code	Meaning												
T	Temporary												
P	Permanent												

## MODIFY

### Uses

The Modify function is intended primarily for maintenance of source statements and procedures by using card input. The Modify function can be used to:

- Reserialize a source library entry.
- List the statements in a source library entry.
- Remove statements from a source library entry.
- Replace source library statements.
- Insert statements into a source library entry.

### *Modify Considerations and Restrictions*

- At least three control statements must be entered to modify the source library. A // MODIFY statement is needed to describe the library entry. A // REMOVE, // REPLACE, or // INSERT statement describes the type of modification. A // CEND statement indicates the end of the MODIFY control statements.
  - The disk specified by the WORK parameter in the // MODIFY statement must contain a work area large enough to hold the modified source library entry.
  - The sequence numbers specified by the FROM-seqno, TO-seqno, and AFTER-seqno parameters on the // REMOVE, // REPLACE, and // INSERT statements must be valid numbers and exist in the source library entry. There are no default values for these parameters. The number of digits entered must be the same as the number of positions specified by the SEQFLD parameter.
  - All statements in a source library entry must have ascending sequence numbers in the positions specified by the SEQFLD parameter.
  - Multiple operations (REMOVE, REPLACE, INSERT) may be performed within the same MODIFY run if they are done in an ascending sequential order. That is, the FROM sequence number in a REMOVE or REPLACE statement must be greater than the last sequence number in the preceding statement. The AFTER sequence number of an INSERT statement must be equal to or greater than the last sequence number of the preceding statement. Consecutive INSERT statements must not have the same sequence number.
  - When modification is complete, the directory entry is written back with a permanent attribute.
  - The control statements following the // MODIFY statement are read from the system input device.
  - Sequence numbers are a physical part of the source record and must be placed where they will not conflict with other data in the record. In a procedure the sequence numbers should be placed near the end of the record beyond the OCL and utility control statement's keywords and parameters.
- Invalid responses may result for OCL procedures with delayed responses, because when the procedure is called, the sequence number may be recognized as the response.
- The sequence numbers should be placed in source statements where they will not overlay data. For example, data could be destroyed if sequence numbers were placed in RPG II source statements that contained compile-time tables. If the statement contains table data in positions 1-85, the sequence numbers for the source module should begin after position 85 (86-96).
- Since the REMOVE control statement is valid for both the \$DELET utility and \$MAINT utility, care should be used when modifying a \$DELET procedure. The program will attempt to determine if the REMOVE statement is data or if it is a control statement. If a determination cannot be made, the program will halt and wait for further instructions.
  - If LIST-YES is specified and a printer error occurs during the listing of the source library entry, responding to the halt with a 2 option will cause the listing to stop. The modified entry will then be placed back into the library before terminating the function with a controlled cancel.

## Control Statement Summary

### Initiate Modification

```
// MODIFY NAME-name, FROM-code, LIBRARY- { S } , WORK-code, RESER- { YES } , LIST- { YES }  
                                     { P }                                     { NO }  
                                     { ONLY }                                     { NO }  
  
                                SEQFLD-xxyy, INCR-number
```

### Control Statements Following // MODIFY

Delete all statements between and including the FROM and TO sequence numbers.

```
// REMOVE FROM-seqno, TO-seqno
```

- Replace all statements between and including the FROM and TO sequence numbers with the statements supplied.

```
// REPLACE FROM-seqno, TO-seqno
```

```
-  
-
```

1-n statements to replace those removed

Insert the supplied statements after the statement indicated by the AFTER parameter.

```
// INSERT AFTER-seqno
```

```
-  
-
```

1-n statements to be inserted

### Terminate Modification

```
// CEND must follow the control statements to terminate the modify function.
```

## Modify Parameter

Parameter	Meaning										
NAME-name	Name of the entry you are modifying. This is the name that identifies the entry in the library directory.										
FROM-code	Location of the disk that contains the entry you are modifying. Possible codes are: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>R1</td> <td>Removable disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F1</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R2</td> <td>Removable disk on drive two</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F2</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive two</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	R1	Removable disk on drive one	F1	Fixed disk on drive one	R2	Removable disk on drive two	F2	Fixed disk on drive two
Code	Meaning										
R1	Removable disk on drive one										
F1	Fixed disk on drive one										
R2	Removable disk on drive two										
F2	Fixed disk on drive two										
LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \end{matrix} \right\}$	Type of library entry you are modifying. Possible codes are: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>S</td> <td>Source statements (source library)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P</td> <td>Procedures (source library)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	S	Source statements (source library)	P	Procedures (source library)				
Code	Meaning										
S	Source statements (source library)										
P	Procedures (source library)										
WORK-code	Location of the disk containing space the program can use as a work area. Possible codes are: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>R1</td> <td>Removable disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F1</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>R2</td> <td>Removable disk on drive two</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F2</td> <td>Fixed disk on drive two</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Code	Meaning	R1	Removable disk on drive one	F1	Fixed disk on drive one	R2	Removable disk on drive two	F2	Fixed disk on drive two
Code	Meaning										
R1	Removable disk on drive one										
F1	Fixed disk on drive one										
R2	Removable disk on drive two										
F2	Fixed disk on drive two										
RESER- $\left. \begin{matrix} YES \\ NO \\ ONLY \end{matrix} \right\}$	Specifies whether reserialization should be done when the entry is placed back in the source library. Possible information is: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Information</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>YES</td> <td>Reserialization is done.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO</td> <td>Reserialization is not done. NO is assumed if the RESER parameter is omitted.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ONLY</td> <td>Reserialize only; no other maintenance is done. When this is coded, no REMOVE, REPLACE, INSERT, or CEND statements can be entered.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Information	Meaning	YES	Reserialization is done.	NO	Reserialization is not done. NO is assumed if the RESER parameter is omitted.	ONLY	Reserialize only; no other maintenance is done. When this is coded, no REMOVE, REPLACE, INSERT, or CEND statements can be entered.		
Information	Meaning										
YES	Reserialization is done.										
NO	Reserialization is not done. NO is assumed if the RESER parameter is omitted.										
ONLY	Reserialize only; no other maintenance is done. When this is coded, no REMOVE, REPLACE, INSERT, or CEND statements can be entered.										
LIST- $\left. \begin{matrix} YES \\ NO \end{matrix} \right\}$	Specifies whether the source library entry should be listed as the modified entry is placed back into the source library. NO is assumed if the LIST parameter is omitted.										
SEQFLD-xyyy	The starting and ending positions of the field that contains the sequence number. The sequence number can be up to eight digits long. The starting position is entered first (xx) and then the ending position (yy). If this parameter is not entered, 9296 is assumed.										
INCR-number	Increment value for sequence field if reserialization (RESER-YES or RESER-ONLY) is specified. The value can be up to five digits. If this parameter is not entered, a value of 10 is assumed.										

## Remove, Replace, Insert Parameters

Parameter	Meaning
FROM-seqno	The sequence number of the first statement to be used in the operation.
TO-seqno	The sequence number of the last statement to be used in the operation.
AFTER-seqno	The sequence number of the statement after which the new statements are to be added.

## RENAME

### Uses

- Change the name of a library entry.
- Change the names of library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.

### Rename Considerations and Restrictions

- System modules should not be renamed on the active system pack (the pack that the system was loaded from during IPL).
- Library Maintenance modules should not be renamed on the active program pack.

### Control Statement Summary

Change the Name of a Library Entry or Entries with the Same Name in All Libraries

```
// RENAME FROM-code, LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,  
NAME-name, NEWNAME-name
```

Change the Name of Library Entries that have Names Beginning with Certain Characters

```
// RENAME FROM-code, LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,  
NAME-characters.ALL,  
NEWNAME-characters
```

## Rename Parameters

Parameter	Meaning
FROM-code	Location of disk that contains the entry you are renaming. Possible codes are:
	<i>Code      Meaning</i>
	R1      Removable disk on drive one
	F1      Fixed disk on drive one
	R2      Removable disk on drive two
	F2      Fixed disk on drive two
LIBRARY- $\left. \begin{matrix} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \end{matrix} \right\}$	Type of library entry you are renaming. Possible codes are:
	<i>Code      Meaning</i>
	S      Source statements (source library)
	P      Procedures (source library)
	O      Object programs (object library)
	R      Routines (object library)
NAME-name	Current name of the entry you are renaming. This is the name that identifies the entry in the library directory.
NAME-characters.ALL	Only those entries beginning with the indicated characters. (You can use up to five characters.)
NEWNAME-name	New name you want to give the entry. Follow these rules to construct the name:
	1. You can use any System/3 characters except blanks, commas, quotes, and periods. (Appendix A lists the characters.) The names of most IBM programs begin with a dollar sign (\$). Therefore, to avoid possible duplication, do not use a dollar sign as the first character in the names you use for your entries. The first character must be alphabetic.
	2. You can use up to six characters, but you cannot use the names ALL, DIR and SYSTEM. They have special meanings in the NAME parameter.
NEWNAME-characters	Beginning characters you want to use in names identifying the copies. (You can use up to five characters.)

## OCL CONSIDERATIONS

### LOAD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	LOAD	None
LOAD NAME	\$MAINT	Name of Library Maintenance program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Library Maintenance program.
MODIFY	RUN	None

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest, unless the copy file-to-library function is to be used. The FILE keywords must be responded to, to define the file.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

### BUILD Sequence

Keywords ①	Responses ②	Considerations
READY	BUILD	None
BUILD NAME	procedure name	Name by which procedure will be identified in source library.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing source library.
LOAD NAME	\$MAINT	Name of Library Maintenance program.
UNIT	R1, R2, F1, or F2	Location of disk containing Library Maintenance program.
MODIFY	INCLUDE utility control statements OR RUN RUN	Response when including control statements in procedure.  Response when not including control statements in procedure.

① Only the keywords listed here are required. You can bypass the rest, unless the copy file-to-library function is to be used. The FILE keywords must be responded to, to define the file.

② You end every response by pressing PROG START.

## ALLOCATE EXAMPLES

### Creating Both Source and Object Libraries on a Disk

#### Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD NAME - $MAINT
011          UNIT - F1
020  DATE      -
030  SWITCH    -
040  FILE NAME -
*****
MODIFY         -
RUN
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT }
// ALLOCATE TO-R1,SOURCE-12,OBJECT-45,SYSTEM-YES }
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT }
// END }

```

**OCL LOAD Sequence.**  
 Boxed areas are operator responses.  
 Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.  
 RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

Message printed by Library Maintenance program.  
 Control statement supplied by operator.

Program creates libraries, then asks for another control statement.

END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

#### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Libraries are being created on the removable disk on drive 1 (TO-R1 in ALLOCATE statement).
- Source library space is twelve tracks long (SOURCE-12).
- Object library space is 45 tracks long (OBJECT-45). The object library will contain system programs (SYSTEM-YES). Thus, the disk area will also include space for the Scheduler work area.

## Changing the Size of a Source Library

### Statements

READY	-	LOAD	
*****			
010	LOAD	NAME	\$MAINT
011		UNIT	F1
020	DATE		
030	SWITCH		
040	FILE	NAME	
*****			
MODIFY	-		
RUN			
ENTER '//'	CONTROL STATEMENT	}	Message printed by Library Maintenance program.
//	ALLOCATE TO-R1, SOURCE-15, WORK-F1	}	Control statement supplied by operator.
ENTER '//'	CONTROL STATEMENT	}	Program changes size of library, then asks for another control statement.
//	END	}	End statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

### OCL LOAD Sequence.

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Source library is located on the removable disk on drive 1 (TO-R1 in ALLOCATE statement).
- Size of the source library is being changed to 15 tracks (SOURCE-15).
- Any time the program changes the size of a source library, it reorganizes the library. To do this, it needs a work area. This area is on the fixed disk on drive 1 (WORK-F1).



## Deleting the Object Library From a Disk

### Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD      NAME      - $MAINT
011                UNIT  - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE      NAME      -
*****

MODIFY
RUN

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance
// ALLOCATE TO-R1,OBJECT-0     } program.
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Control statement supplied by operator.
// END                         } Program deletes library, then asks for
                                } another control statement.
                                } END statement, supplied by operator, ends
                                } the program.

```

### OCL LOAD Sequence.

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- Object library is located on the removable disk on drive 1 (TO-R1 in ALLOCATE statement).
- OBJECT-0 parameter tells the program to delete the object library. If a scheduler work area precedes the object library, it is also deleted.

## COPY EXAMPLES

### Copying Minimum System from One Disk to Another

#### Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010   LOAD    NAME    - $MAINT
011                UNIT - F1
020   DATE
030   SWITCH
040   FILE    NAME    -
*****

MODIFY
RUN

```

**OCL LOAD Sequence.**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance
                                program.
// COPY FROM-F1 , LIBRARY-O , NAME-SYSTEM , TO-R1 } Control statement supplied
                                                    by the operator.
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program copies programs, then asks
                                for another control statement.
// END } END statement, supplied by operator, ends
        the program.

```

#### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- System programs are in the object library on the fixed disk on drive 1 (LIBRARY-O and FROM-F1 in COPY statement).
- The NAME parameter (NAME-SYSTEM) tells the program to copy the system programs.
- The disk that is to contain the copy is the removable disk on drive 1 (TO-R1).

## Printing Library Directories

### Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD      NAME      - $MAINT
011          UNIT      - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE      NAME      -
*****

MODIFY
RUN
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance
// COPY FROM-R1 ,LIBRARY-ALL ,NAME-DIR ,TO-PRINT ,OMIT-$.ALL } program.
                           } Control statement supplied
                           } by the operator.
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program prints directories, then asks for
// END                       } another control statement.
                           } END statement, supplied by operator, ends
                           } the program.

```

### OCL LOAD Sequence.

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- All library directories and the system directory on the removable disk on drive 1 are printed (COPY statement):
  1. FROM identifies the disk containing the directories.
  2. LIBRARY indicates which directories are to be printed.
  3. NAME and TO indicates that the program is to be printing directories.
  4. Entries beginning with a \$ are not printed.

## Replacing a Library Entry: Replacement Coming From Another Disk

### Situation

Assume that you have two versions of an object program:

1. New version on the removable disk on drive 1.
2. Old version on the fixed disk on drive 1.

Both versions have the same name (ACCT) and designation (permanent). You want to replace the old version with the new version.

### Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010  LOAD      NAME      - $MAINT
011          UNIT      - F1
020  DATE
030  SWITCH
040  FILE      NAME      -
*****
MODIFY
RUN
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance
                                program.
// COPY FROM-R1 , LIBRARY-O , NAME-ACCT , TO-F1 , RETAIN-R } Control statement supplied
                                                                by operator.

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program replaces library entry, then asks for
                                another control statement.

// END } END statement, supplied by operator, ends the
        program.

```

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- LIBRARY-O, NAME-ACCT, and FROM-R1 in the COPY statement tell the program to read the object program named ACCT from the removable disk on drive 1.
- TO-F1 tells the program to copy the object program to the fixed disk on drive 1. There is no NEWNAME parameter in the COPY statement. Therefore, the name the program will have on the fixed disk is ACCT (NAME-ACCT). Since the old version of the program already exists on the fixed disk under that name, the old version is replaced.
- The Library Maintenance program normally halts before replacing a library entry. The RETAIN-R parameter, however, tells the program to omit that halt.

## Copying a Disk File To a Library

### Statements

```

READY
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-
011              UNIT-
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX)
030 SWITCH (00000000)  -
040 FILE          NAME-
041              UNIT-
042              PACK-
043              LABEL-
050 FILE          NAME-
*****
MODIFY

```

```

LOAD
$MAINT
F1

BSCAFILE
R1
BSCA
PROGRAMS

```

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line

Message printed by Library Maintenance program.

Control statement supplied by operator.

```

RUN

```

```

ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT }

```

```

COPY FROM-DISK,TO-F1,RETAIN-P,FILE-BSCAFILE }

```

```

XX COPY LIBRARY-P,NAME-PAYREC
XX COPY LIBRARY-O,NAME-PAYREC
XX END

```

} Control statements from disk file.

} Program copies programs, then asks for another control statement.

```

ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT }

```

```

// END

```

} END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

### Explanation

- The OCL for a File-to-Library copy must contain a FILE statement for the disk file.
- The filename on the // COPY statement (FILE-BSCAFILE) matches the filename on the OCL FILE statement (NAME-BSCAFILE).
- The // COPY statement does not contain a RECL parameter, so a record length of 96 is assumed.
- All source and object decks in the disk file must have a // COPY statement as the first card image and a // CEND statement as the last card image. These // statements (including the // END statement) are logged with XX replacing the // to indicate they were read from disk rather than from the system input device or a procedure.
- The // END statement read from the file (printed XX END), causes the next statement to be read from the system input device or procedure. A // END statement must still be read from the system input device or procedure to indicate the end of the Library Maintenance control statements.

## Copying a Procedure From the System Input Device

### Statements

```
READY-
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-
011              UNIT-
020 DATE    (11/27/73) -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE          NAME-
*****
MODIFY
```

```
RUN
```

```
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
```

```
// COPY FROM-READER,TO-F1,LIBRARY-P,NAME-COPYF1
// LOAD $COPY,F1
// RUN
// COPYPACK FROM-F1,TO-R1
// END
// CEND
```

```
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT
```

```
// END
```

```
LOAD
$MAINT
F1
```

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

Message printed by Library Maintenance Program.

Control statement supplied by the operator.

Procedure copied to the source library. These statements are supplied by the operator.

Message printed by Library Maintenance Program asking for another control statement.

END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

### Explanation:

- FROM-READER tells the Library Maintenance program to read the statements from the system input device.
- The procedure (LIBRARY-P) is written to the source library on F1 (TO-F1), named COPYF1 (NAME-COPYF1), and given the default attribute of temporary.
- All statements following the // COPY statement are entered into the library until the // CEND statement is read to terminate the copy.

## DELETE EXAMPLES

### Deleting a Temporary Entry From a Library

#### Statements

READY	-	LOAD	
*****			
010	LOAD	NAME	- \$MAINT
011		UNIT	- F1
020	DATE		-
030	SWITCH		-
040	FILE	NAME	-
*****			
MODIFY	-		
RUN			

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance program.

// DELETE FROM-R1, LIBRARY-S, NAME-PAYROL } Control statement supplied by operator.

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program deletes library entry, then asks for another control statement.

// END } END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

#### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

#### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The program deletes a set of source statements (LIBRARY-S in DELETE statement) named PAYROL (NAME-PAYROL) from the removable disk on drive 1 (FROM-R1).
- The absence of a RETAIN parameter implies that the entry designation is temporary. If the designation were permanent, RETAIN-P would have been required.

## Deleting All Temporary Entries With Names That Begin With Certain Characters

### Statements

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010   LOAD     NAME      - $MAINT
011           UNIT      -  F1
020   DATE
030   SWITCH
040   FILE     NAME      -
*****
MODIFY
RUN
  
```

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses..

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance
                                  program.
// DELETE FROM-R1 ,LIBRARY-ALL ,NAME-INV .ALL } Control statement supplied by operator.
ENTER '// ' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program deletes entries, then asks
                                  for another control statement.
// END                               } END statement, supplied by operator,
                                  ends the program.
  
```

### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The entries being deleted are on the removable disk on drive 1 (FROM-R1 in DELETE statement).
- The program deletes all entries from both source and object libraries (LIBRARY-ALL) that have names beginning with the characters INV (NAME-INV.ALL).
- The absence of a RETAIN parameter implies that temporary entries are being deleted.



**Deleting All Permanent Library Entries of One Type**

*Statements*

```

READY          - LOAD
*****
010   LOAD     NAME     - $MAINT
011           UNIT     - F1
020   DATE
030   SWITCH
040   FILE     NAME     -
*****
MODIFY         -
RUN
    
```

**OCL LOAD Sequence**

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library Maintenance
                                } program.
// DELETE FROM-R1,LIBRARY-P,NAME-ALL,RETAIN-P } Control statement supplied by operator.
ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program deletes entries, then asks for another
                                } control statement.
// END                               } END statement, supplied by operator, ends
                                } the program
    
```

*Explanation*

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The entries being deleted are on the removable disk on drive 1 (FROM-R1 in DELETE statement).
- All permanent procedures are being deleted from the source library (LIBRARY-P,NAME-ALL,RETAIN-P).

# MODIFY EXAMPLES

## Replacing Statements in a Procedure

### Statements

```

READY-
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-
011              UNIT-
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX) -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE         NAME-
*****
MODIFY
RUN
ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT

// MODIFY NAME-PROC01, FROM-R2, LIBRARY-P, WORK-R1, RESER-NO, LIST-YES
// REPLACE FROM-00101, TO-00102
// FILE NAME-INV, PACK-VOL2, UNIT-R1, RECORDS-300, RETAIN-P
// FILE NAME-WORK, PACK-VOL2, UNIT-R1
// CEND

// LOAD BUILD, F1
// FILE NAME-INV, PACK-VOL2, UNIT-R1, RECORDS-300, RETAIN-P
// FILE NAME-WORK, PACK-VOL2, UNIT-R1
// RUN

ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END
    
```

LOAD  
\$MAINT  
F1

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

Message printed by Library Maintenance program.

```

00101 }
00102 } Control statement supplied by operator.

00100 }
00101 }
00102 } Program lists procedure, then asks for another control statement.
00103 }

} END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program
    
```

### Explanation

- The procedure named PROC01 on disk drive R2 is being modified.
- The work space will be on R1.
- The sequence numbers are in default positions 92-96.
- Statements with sequence number 00101-00102 are being replaced.
- The module is not reserialized.
- The module is listed.

## Removing Source Statements From a Module

### Statements

#### Removing Source Statements From a Module.

```

READY-
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-
011              UNIT-
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX)  -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE          NAME-
*****
MODIFY

```

```

LOAD
$MAINT
F1

```

```

RUN
ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT

```

```

// MODIFY NAME-INPUT1, FROM-R1, LIBRARY-S, WORK-R1, RESER-YES,
//          LIST-NO, SEQFLD-0105, INCR-1
// REMOVE FROM-00124, TO-00156
// CEND

```

```

ENTER '///' CONTROL STATEMENT
// END

```

#### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

Message printed by Library Maintenance program.

Control statements supplied by the operator.

Program removes statements, then asks for another control statement.

END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

### Explanation

- The source module named INPUT1 on disk drive R1 is being modified.
- The work space will be on R1.
- The sequence numbers are in positions 1-5 of the statements.
- Sequence numbers 00124-00156 are being deleted from the module.
- The module is reserialized with increments of one.
- The module is not listed.

## Inserting a Statement in a Source Module

### Statements

```

READY-
*****
010 LOAD          NAME-
011              UNIT-
020 DATE (XX/XX/XX)  -
030 SWITCH (00000000) -
040 FILE         NAME-
*****
MODIFY

```

```

LOAD
$MAINT
F1

```

### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

RUN
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT }
// MODIFY FROM-F1,WORK-F1,NAME-COST,LIBRARY-S,
// RESER-YES,SEQFLD-8084,LIST-YES
// INSERT AFTER-00070
00080I
// CEND

```

Message printed by Library Maintenance program.

```

3 8 DATE

```

Control statements supplied by the operator.

Source module listed with new entry

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT }
// END

```

Program inserts statements, then asks for another control statement.

END statement, supplied by operator, ends the program.

### Explanation

- The source module COST on fixed disk drive one is being modified.
- The work space is on F1.
- The sequence numbers are in positions 80-84 of the statements.
- A statement is being inserted after statement number 00070.
- The module is reserialized with the default increment value of 10.
- The module is listed.

## RENAME EXAMPLE

### Renaming a Set of Source Statements in a Source Library

#### Statements

```

READY          -  LOAD
*****
010  LOAD      NAME - $MAINT
011          UNIT -  F1
020  DATE      -
030  SWITCH    -
040  FILE      NAME -
*****
MODIFY         -

```

RUN

#### OCL LOAD Sequence

Boxed areas are operator responses.

Keywords for which no responses are shown are the ones bypassed.

RUN is the response to MODIFY even though the two words do not appear on the same line.

```

ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Message printed by Library maintenance
                               program.
// RENAME FROM-R1, LIBRARY-S, NAME-ACCT, NEWNAME-ACCT1 } Control statement supplied
                                                         by operator.
ENTER '//' CONTROL STATEMENT } Program renames entry, then asks for
                               another control statement.
// END                       } END statement, supplied by operator, ends
                               the program.

```

#### Explanation

- Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive 1 (UNIT-F1 in OCL sequence).
- The removable disk on drive 1 contains the entry being renamed (FROM-R1 in RENAME statement).
- The entry is a set of source statements in the source library (LIBRARY-S). Its name is ACCT (NAME-ACCT).
- The entry name is being changed to ACCT1 (NEWNAME-ACCT1).

Appendix A: IBM System/3 Standard Character Set

Character	Hexadecimal Equivalent				
Blank	40	=	7E	W	E6
¢	4A	≠	7F	X	E7
.	4B	A	C1	Y	E8
<	4C	B	C2	Z	E9
(	4D	C	C3	0	F0
+	4E	D	C4	1	F1
	4F	E	C5	2	F2
&	50	F	C6	3	F3
↑	5A	G	C7	4	F4
\$	5B	H	C8	5	F5
*	5C	I	C9	6	F6
)	5D	}	D0	7	F7
;	5E	J	D1	8	F8
└	5F	K	D2	9	F9
- (minus)	60	L	D3		
/	61	M	D4		
,	6B	N	D5		
%	6C	O	D6		
- (underscore)	6D	P	D7		
>	6E	Q	D8		
?	6F	R	D9		
:	7A	S	E2		
#	7B	T	E3		
@	7C	U	E4		
' (Apostrophe)	7D	V	E5		

## Appendix B: Records – Tracks Conversion

### For Sequential or Direct Files

To determine how many tracks will be required for a sequential or direct file:

1. Number of records x record length = total number of characters.
2. Total number of characters ÷ 6144 (number of characters in a track) = number of tracks. (Round result up to nearest whole number.)

### For Indexed Files

To determine how many tracks will be required for an indexed file:

#### Step 1. (Tracks Required for Data)

- A. Number of records x record length = total number of characters.
- B. Total number of characters ÷ 6144 = number of tracks. (Round result up to nearest whole number.)

#### Step 2. (Tracks Required for Index)

- A. Key Field length + 3 = index entry length.
- B.  $256$  (number of characters in a sector) ÷ index entry length = number of entries per sector. (Round result down to nearest whole number.)
- C. Number of records ÷ number of entries per sector = number of sectors. (Round result up to nearest whole number.)
- D. Number of sectors ÷ 24 (number of sectors per track) = number of tracks. (Round result up to nearest whole number.)

#### Step 3. (Total Track Requirement)

Result of step 1 + result of step 2 = total number of tracks required for the indexed file.

## Appendix C: Disk Organization

Disk Area	Contents
VTOC*	Detailed information about each file on disk
Source Library	Source Library Directory RPG II Source Programs Disk Sort Specifications Procedures KSE Input (Format Descriptions or Source Statements)
Object Library	Object Library Directory Compiled Programs System Programs
Files	User files System files

\*Volume Table of Contents

### Volume Table of Contents (VTOC)

The VTOC contains detailed information about each file on the disk. Much of this information is for system use only and is of no interest to the programmer. The VTOC file information significant to the programmer is:

1. Name.
2. Starting track location and number of tracks.
3. Designation (Permanent, Temporary, or Scratch).
4. Organization (Sequential, Direct, or Indexed).
5. Creation date.

### Source Library

Procedures, RPG II source programs, and KSE input reside in a source library. The source library directory contains the name and address (track and sector) of each procedure, RPG II source program, and set of KSE input in the library.

### Object Library

Compiled programs and system programs reside in an object library. The object library directory contains the name and address (track and sector) of each program in the library.

### Files

Identifying information about every file on a disk is contained in the disk VTOC.

A disk is limited to 50 files because the VTOC has space for identifying only that many files.



This chapter applies only to RPG II and FORTRAN.

In some data processing applications, customers may make inquiries that require immediate answers. One customer may want the status of his account; another may want to know if an item is in stock for immediate delivery. To answer these inquiries, your program must be able to access certain disk records. The object program you use to retrieve this information is called an *inquiry program*. The following discussion generally applies to both RPG II and FORTRAN; differences are noted.

Inquiry programs can be executed as part of a normal job stream, or they can interrupt other programs that are executing provided the executing program can be interrupted. After a request for inquiry is made, the following things occur:

1. A program being executed is interrupted.
2. The current status of the program is stored on disk.

3. The inquiry program is loaded to retrieve and display the requested information.
4. The original program is reloaded and execution resumes.

**Requesting Inquiry In an Interrupt Environment**

To interrupt a job prior to loading an inquiry program, you must make an *inquiry request*. To request inquiry, you use the system control panel attached to the IBM 5406 Processing Unit (Figure D-2).

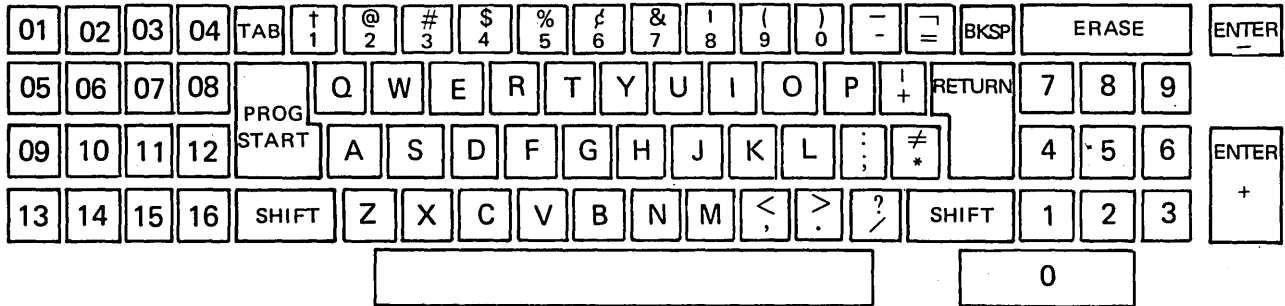


Figure D-1. Keyboard Format of the Model 6 Keyboard Console



## FORTTRAN

A FORTRAN main program may allow itself to be interrupted by inquiry programs. Interruption occurs at CALL INQCHK statements in the main program.

All inquiry programs have CALL SETINQ as their first statement. For more information, see the *IBM System/3 FORTRAN IV Reference Manual*, SC28-6874, and *IBM System/3 FORTRAN IV Commercial Subroutines*, SC28-6875.

### Inquiry In an Interrupt Environment

An inquiry program can be loaded into storage as would any other program, or it can be loaded when an inquiry request is made to interrupt a program that is executing. When your system is controlled by one program at any one time, you have a *dedicated system*. Therefore, in an interrupt environment you must interrupt the executing program to allow the inquiry program to control the system. You request an interrupt by moving the INQUIRY REQUEST switch to the ON position. For RPG II, you can interrupt only B-type programs; for FORTRAN, you can interrupt only a program containing CALL INQCHK.

*Note:* An inquiry program cannot be interrupted during processing.

As soon as the INQUIRY REQUEST switch is moved to the ON position, the system sets an indicator and the executing program completes the execution cycle it is in. A system routine called roll-out then transfers the B-type program from main storage onto disk, retaining the current status of the program (Figure D-4, insert A). Space is allocated for the rolled out program at system generation time. (See the *IBM System/3 Model 6 Operator's Guide*, GC21-7501, for system generation procedures.) For the scheduler work area size, including space requirements for roll-in/roll-out, see *Library Maintenance Program (\$MAINT)* in this manual.

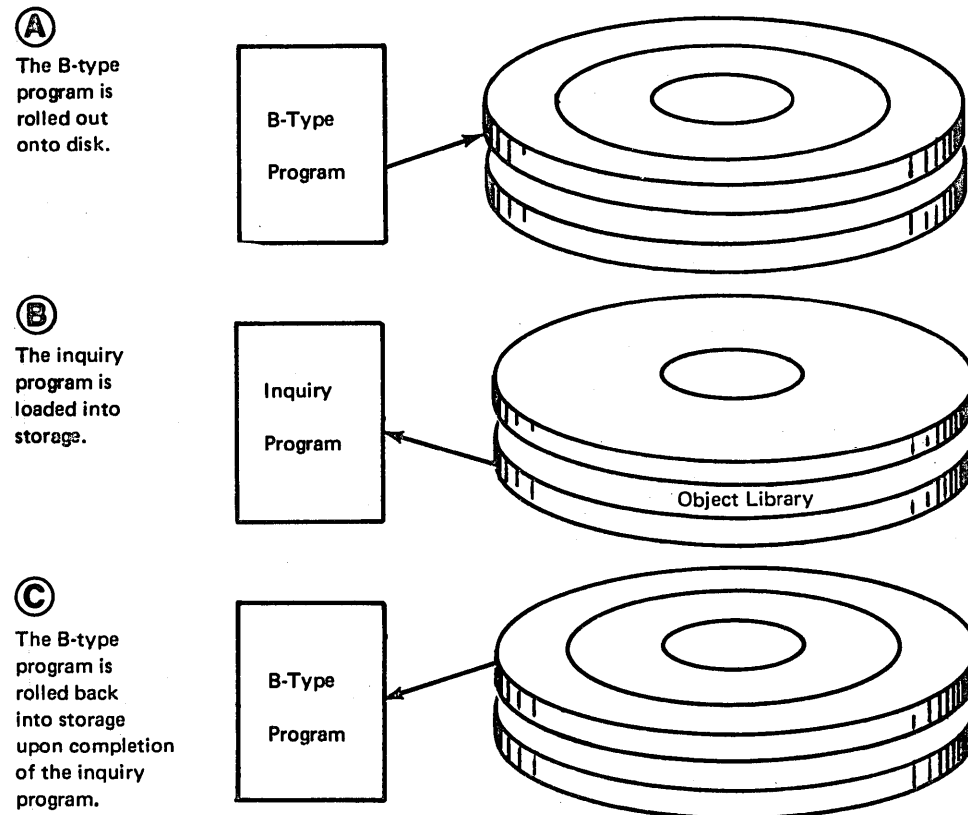


Figure D-4. Roll-Out and Roll-In of a B-Type Program

## Planning Inquiry Programs

Since B-type programs can be interrupted, you must determine what types of programs should be classified as B-type. Usually long reports that do not have to be finished immediately, are classified as B-type. Such a report might be an end-of-month stock status report.

Inquiry programs that can interrupt B-type programs can be classified as  $\emptyset$ , B, or I-type. For example, suppose you are running an end-of-month stock status report, and now find you must run a payroll job. The payroll job can roll out the stock status job to satisfy this requirement. Another example of an inquiry program that might need to be loaded immediately would be a request to determine where a certain inventory item is located so that it can be shipped. Since the inventory file is online for the stock status report, the location of the item could be determined quickly by an inquiry program.

Those programs you do not want rolled out should be  $\emptyset$ -type. For example, you may be running a payroll job and checks are positioned for the printer. You may not want the payroll program rolled out since the operator may have to remove the checks and not reposition them correctly. If you are running a teleprocessing program, you cannot roll out the program because you will lose telephone connections.

In a dedicated system, an I-type program could be loaded for a length of time to answer requests. For example, an I-type program could be loaded during the second shift of a day to answer inquiries into the amount or location of items in a warehouse. An I-type program remaining in main storage can only be executed by moving the INQUIRY REQUEST switch to the ON position.

## Appendix E. Library Entry Retrieval Subroutine (SUBR 15)

The Library Entry Retrieval subroutine is incorporated into a user-written program in order to retrieve entries from any library. Library entries are passed to the user program one record at a time. If these records are written to a 5444 Disk File, that file can be processed by the file-to-library function of the Library Maintenance program (\$MAINT).

With SUBR15, a single library entry or a group of entries can be retrieved. The user must supply certain information, such as the name of the entry, the unit containing the library (R1, F1, R2, or F2), and the type of library to be accessed (source, object, procedure, or routine).

The format of the records produced by this subroutine is the same as the format of the records produced by the library-to-punch function of \$MAINT. The first record returned to the program by the subroutine for each library entry is an appropriate COPY statement. The last record for each entry is a CEND statement.

*Note:* It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the library is not being changed by another program while SUBR15 is reading from that library.

## USING SUBR15 WITH RPG II

Linkage to SUBR15 from an RPG II program is via an EXIT statement followed by seven RLABL statements. Information about subroutine linkage can be found in *IBM System/3 Models 4 and 6 RPG II Reference Manual*, SC21-7517.

These RLABL statements must be specified in the following order:

Sequence	Operation	Result Field	Description
1	RLABL	field	The name of a one-character alphabetic field in the RPG II program that contains a code identifying the desired library:  O Object R Routine S Source P Procedure
2	RLABL	field	The name of a six-character alphabetic field in the RPG II program that contains the name of the desired library entry. A library entry may be requested by name or by a partial name followed by a period. If a partial name is used, all entries in the given library beginning with the characters preceding the period will be copied.  If copying an entire library, a period alone is sufficient specification.
3	RLABL	field	The name of a two-character alphabetic field in the RPG II program that contains the unit containing the desired library: R1, F1, R2, or F2.
4	RLABL	field	The name of an 80-character alphabetic field, or a 96-character alphabetic field, which is to contain each record processed by the subroutine.
5	RLABL	INnn	The nn is any RPG II indicator, which will be set on if the desired library entry is not found, the library does not exist on the specified unit, or the system source library get routine (\$\$\$SYSG) cannot be found.
6	RLABL	INnn	The nn is any RPG II indicator, which will be set on when the request for service is complete. When this indicator is set on, the RPG II program can request another entry or entries.
7	RLABL	INnn	The nn is any RPG II indicator, which will be set on every time a record is passed to the RPG II program from the subroutine.

*Note:* The three preceding indicators are set off by SUBR15 upon receiving control from the user program.

# ERROR IDENTIFICATION

# Example

If an error is detected in SUBR15, all three indicators are set off. Any of the following errors may be detected:

The following is an example that shows how an RPG II program can use SUBR15.

- The unit is not R1, F1, R2, or F2.
- The unit is not supported on the system.
- The pack on the specified unit is not initialized.
- The library is not O, R, S, or P.
- The record length is not 80 or 96 bytes.
- The unit, library, or name was changed before end of request was returned.
- The three indicators are not unique.

IBM International Business Machine Corporation		RPG CALCULATION SPECIFICATIONS																				Form GX21-9093-2 Printed in U.S.A.	
Program		Punching Instruction		Graphic		Card Electro Number		Page 1 2 of		Program Identification		75 76 77 78 79 80											
Programmer		Date		Punch																			
C	Line	Form Type	Control Level (L, O, L, P, a, L, R, SR, AN, OR)	Indicators			Factor 1	Operation	Factor 2	Result Field		Resulting Indicators			Comments								
				And	And	And				Name	Length	Arithmetic	Plus	Minus		Zero							
				Not	Not	Not						1 > 2	1 < 2	1 = 2									
												Lookup (Factor 2) is	High	Low	Equal								
												Half Adjust (H)											
	01	C					LOOP	TAG															
	02	C						EXIT SUBR15															
	03	C						RLABL	LIBRY	1													
	04	C						RLABL	NAME	6													
	05	C						RLABL	UNIT	2													
	06	C						RLABL	RECL96	96													
	07	C						RLABL	INØ1														
	08	C						RLABL	INØ2														
	09	C						RLABL	INØ3														
	10	C		Ø3				EXCPT															
	11	C		Ø3				GOTO LOOP1															
	12	C																					
	13	C																					
	14	C																					
	15	C																					
	16	C																					
	17	C																					
	18	C																					
	19	C																					
	20	C																					

The following list describes preceding RLABL result fields:

- The field LIBRY contains a code (O, R, S, or P) identifying the library.
- The field NAME contains the name of the library entry or entries to be retrieved.
- The field UNIT contains the code (R1, F1, R2, or F2) identifying the location of the library.
- The field RECL96 is a 96-byte field that will contain each record.
- Indicator 01 is set on if the library entry is not found or if the library does not exist on the specified unit.
- Indicator 02 is set on when the request is complete.
- Indicator 03 is set on for each record. In this example, the indicator is used to condition the writing of the record to a file via the EXCPT operation code; by branching to LOOP1 another record is requested.



Capsule definitions of some common computer terms used in this manual.

**conversational OCL** (Operation Control Language) An OCL statement consisting of a key-word and a response.

**CPU** (Central Processing Unit) Nucleus of the Model 6 hardware.

**end-of-job-halt** system halt at the end of every job to give the operator time for any necessary housekeeping chores before beginning the next job.

**IPL** (Initial Program Load) The process by which the operator loads into core storage the program that controls the operation of the system.

**KDE** Keyboard Data Entry Utility Program

**KSE** Keyboard Source Entry Utility Program

**object library** contains compiled programs, system programs, and routines.

**object library directory** contains name and address (track and sector) of each object program in the object library.

**OCL** (Operation Control Language) An OCL statement consisting of statement identifiers and parameters.

**procedure**

**sector**

**source library**

**source library directory**

**source statements**

**sysgen**

**system printer**

**track**

**VTOC**

sequence of OCL statements in a source library.

section of a disk track. Each track is divided into 24 sectors.

contains procedures, RPG source programs, and KSE input.

contains name and address (track and sector) of each source program and procedure in the source library.

program instructions that have not been compiled (translated) into machine language.

(system generation) Process required to get a system ready to run after installation.

displays OCL statements, utility control statements, job comments, and error codes. (The system printer can also display the normal output of the job being run.) Also referred to as system log device.

Each disk is divided into concentric circles called tracks.

(Volume Table of Contents) That part of a disk which contains detailed information about every file on the disk.



// ALLOCATE 154  
 (see also allocate, library maintenance)  
 // ALT 95  
 (see also alternate track assignment program)  
 // blank 82  
 // CEND 162  
 (see also copy, library maintenance)  
 // COPY 162  
 (see also copy, library maintenance)  
 // DISPLAY 106  
 (see also file and volume display program)  
 // END (see END control statement)  
 // READER 30, 32  
 // REBUILD 100  
 (see also alternate track rebuild program)  
 // REMOVE 113  
 (see also file delete program)  
 // RENAME 181  
 (see also rename, library maintenance)  
 // SCRATCH 113  
 (see also file delete program)  
 // UIN 86  
 (see also disk initialization program)  
 in OCL sample job #1 64  
 // VOL 86  
 (see also disk initialization program)  
 in OCL sample job #1 64  
 / & 32  
 /\* (end-of-job) 32  
 card OCL 29  
 conversational OCL 4  
 ? (see delayed response)

\$DELETE (file delete)  
 (see also file delete program)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$DGSRT CCP/disk sort 39  
 \$DIU (data interchange utility)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$DSORT (disk sort)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$INIT (disk initialization)  
 (see also disk initialization program)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 in OCL sample job #1 64  
 \$KCOPY (copy/dump program) 119  
 \$KDE (keyboard data entry)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$KSE (keyboard source entry)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$LABEL (file and volume label display)  
 (see also file and volume label display program)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$MAINT (library maintenance)  
 (see also library maintenance program)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$RPG (RPG compiler)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \*comments 32

\$ALT (alternate track assignment)  
 (see also alternate track assignment program)  
 \$BUILD (alternate track rebuild)  
 (see also alternate track rebuild program)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 \$CCP communications control program 39  
 \$COPY (copy/dump)  
 (see also copy/dump program)  
 as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39  
 in OCL sample job #4 67

adding source library entries  
 (\$MAINT) 178  
 AFTER parameter 181  
 allocate, library maintenance  
 control statement summary 154  
 parameter summary 155  
 uses 152  
 ALT control statement 95  
 (see also alternate track assignment program)

- alternate track assignment program
  - control statement summary 95
  - example 98
  - OCL considerations 97
  - parameter descriptions 96
  - parameter summary 95
  - program name 97
  - program uses 93
- alternate track rebuild program
  - control statement summary 100
  - example 103
  - OCL considerations 102
  - parameter descriptions 101
  - parameter summary 100
  - program name 102
  - program uses 100
  - substitute data description 101
  - substitute data summary 100
- alternate tracks
  - alternate track assignment 96
  - disk initialization 83
  - incorrect data on 100
- apostrophes in control statements 55, 82
- ASSIGN parameter 96
- asterisk (see comments)

- blanks in control statements 82
- BUILD cycle, when to use 6
- BUILD NAME
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 17
  - its position in the BUILD cycle 16
  - keyword description 33
- BUILDC cycle, when to use 7
- BUILDC NAME
  - in BUILDC keyword-response summary 25
  - its position in the BUILDC cycle 25
  - keyword description 33

- CALL cycle, when to use 7
- CALL NAME
  - in the CALL keyword-response summary 27
  - its position in CALL cycle 27
  - keyword description 33
- CANCEL
  - as response to MODIFY in BUILD cycle 23
  - as response to MODIFY in CALL cycle 27
  - as response to MODIFY in LOAD cycle 15
  - entering the keyword during MODIFY 43
- cancelling alternate-track assignments 94
- cancelling job (see CANCEL)

- card and diskette considerations (\$COPY)
  - card or diskette input 132
  - card or diskette output 132
  - considerations for copying an entire disk 133
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 133, 135
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 133
  - length and location parameters 132
  - OCL 133
- card OCL input 29
- cataloged procedures (see procedures)
- CCP/disk sort (\$DGSRT) 39
- CEND control statement
  - library-to-card copy 162
  - reader-to-library copy 161
- chained procedures 57
- changing
  - file designation 38
  - object library size
    - disk considerations 159, 160
    - SYSTEM parameter 156
    - work parameter 157
  - previous OCL statement during MODIFY phase 42
  - printed output for system programs (see FORMS)
  - size of source library
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 158, 159
    - work parameter 157
  - status of system printer (see LOG)
- character set, standard 198
- clear initialization 84
- coding rules
  - control statements 82
  - disk utility programs 82
  - general 31
  - multivolume file parameters 55
  - statement order 32
- commas in control statements
  - disk utilities 82
  - OCL
    - deleting statement 42
    - in HIKEY 52
- comments
  - entering comments during MODIFY phase 43
  - on response line 10
- communications control program (\$CCP) 39
- COMPILE OBJECT
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 17
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 11
  - its position in LOAD cycle 10
  - its position in the BUILD cycle 16
  - keyword description 34
- compiled RPG program location 34
- compiling large RPG source programs 55
- compiling RPG source programs
  - recommended method of 65
- compress in place 160
- conditional assignment of alternate tracks 94
- configuration ii

- considerations
  - allocate 153
  - delete 176
  - during a call cycle 27
  - IPL 48
  - keyword-response summary
    - build cycle 17
    - BUILDC cycle 25
    - call cycle 27
    - load cycle 11
  - modify 178
- OCL
  - alternate track assignment program 97
  - alternate track rebuild program 102
  - disk initialization program 90
  - file and volume label display program 110
  - file delete program 116
  - library maintenance program 182
  - multivolume files 52
  - 129 programming 29
  - 3741 data station 29
  - 5496 data recorder 29
- continuation rules for card OCL 31
- control statements
  - alternate track assignment
    - ALT statement 95
  - alternate track rebuild
    - REBUILD statement 100
  - coding rules 82
  - disk initialization
    - UIN statement 85
    - VOL statement 85
  - file and volume label display
    - DISPLAY statement 105
  - file delete
    - REMOVE statement 113
    - SCRATCH statement 113
  - library maintenance
    - ALLOCATE statement 154
    - COPY statement 162
    - DELETE statement 176
    - INSERT statement 179
    - MODIFY statement 179
    - REMOVE statement 179
    - RENAME statement 181
    - REPLACE statement 179
    - required to specify program options 123
- conversational OCL, how it works 4
- COPY/DUMP program (\$COPY)
  - card or diskette input 132
  - card or diskette output 132
  - considerations (see card and diskette considerations)
  - control statement summary 124
  - COPYFILE statement 126
  - copying and printing 120
  - copying entire disk 120
  - DELETE parameter 130
  - disk or file location 119
  - examples 136
  - FILE parameter 131
  - functions 119
  - OCL considerations 133
  - options 120
  - parameter descriptions 129
  - printing files 121
  - record keys 119
  - relative record numbers 119
  - REORG parameter 130
  - SELECT KEY and PKY parameter 130
  - SELECT RECORD parameter 131
  - using a work area 119
- copy, library maintenance
  - control statement summaries 162
  - examples 186
  - parameter summary 165
  - uses 161
- COPYFILE control statement 123
- copying
  - entire disk 120
  - files 121
  - library entries
    - file to library 161
    - library-to-card 162
    - library-to-library 161
    - library-to-printer 161
    - library-to-printer and card 162
    - reader-to-library 161
  - multivolume index files 122
  - one removable disk to another on drive 1 119
- COPYPACK statement 123
- correcting OCL statements 42
- CPU (processing unit)
  - definition 209
- create an indexed file from sequential card file 147
- create an indexed file from sequential disk input 149
- creating object library 159
  - control statement 154
  - SYSTEM parameter 155
  - WORK parameter 155
- creating source library 158
  - control statement 154
  - WORK parameter 155
- customer program name
  - as response to keyword LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39

- data interchange utility (\$DIU)
  - as response to LOAD NAME in OCL cycle 39
- DATA parameter (\$DELETE) 115
- data recorder to OCL code statements on cards 29
- DATA96 response to keyword READER 29
- DATE (file date)
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 23
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 15
  - keyword-description of 38
  - position in BUILD sequence 16
  - position in LOAD sequence 10
  - restrictions during file creation runs 38
- DATE (system date)
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 19
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 12
  - keyword description 34
  - position in BUILD sequence 16
  - position in LOAD sequence 10
- DATE parameter of file delete program 115
- DATE statement, format of
  - definition 35
  - general restrictions 35
- defective tracks
  - address on disk 96
  - definition (see surface analysis)
  - retesting of 88
- delayed response
  - definition of, restrictions, effect on system 6
- delayed responses in procedure 27
- delete
  - files 112
  - library entries 176
  - object library
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 159
  - previous OCL statement during MODIFY phase 42
  - procedures 33
  - records from a file 121
  - source library
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 159
- DELETE control statement 176
- DELETE parameter (\$COPY) 130
- delete, library maintenance
  - control statement summary 176
  - examples 191
  - parameter summary 177
  - uses 176
- designation of library entry 167
- direct files
  - deleting records from 131
  - OCL consideration for multivolume files 52
  - records-tracks conversion for 199
- DIRSIZE parameter 156
- disk drive, sectors 83
- disk files 200

- disk initialization program 83
  - control statements 85
  - OCL considerations 90
  - parameter descriptions 88
  - parameter summary 87
  - program name 90
  - program uses 83
- disk name
  - characters allowed in 89
  - length of 89
  - response to PACK in OCL cycle 36
  - uses
    - alternate track assignment 96
    - alternate track rebuild 101
    - disk initialization 89
    - file delete 114
- disk organization 200
- DISP (displacement) parameter 101
- DISPLAY control statement 106
- duplicate procedure names
  - general discussion 33
  - operator's options following 33
- EJECT
  - in card OCL 30
  - in conversational OCL 5, 35
- END control statement 82
- end-of-job halt
  - definition 209
  - response to READY 5
- ENTER- key, bypassing procedure
  - printout 9, 27, 33
- ENTER+ key
  - purpose of, when to use 9
  - relationship to the PROG START key 9
  - uses of 9
- entering comments
  - during the MODIFY phase 43
  - on response line 10
- error code (see error messages)
- error messages 60
- errors in OCL statements, how to correct 42

## examples

- alternate track assignment, conditional assignment 98
- alternate track rebuild, correcting characters 193
- disk initialization, primary initialization 91
- file and volume label display, printing VTOC information 111
- file delete
  - deleting one of several files having same name 117
  - removing one file 118
- library maintenance
  - changing source library size 184
  - copy file-to-library 189
  - copying minimum system 186
  - creating libraries 183
  - deleting object library 185
  - deleting temporary entry 191
  - deleting temporary entry—special characters 192
  - insert source library statements 196
  - printing library directories 187
  - removing source library statements 195
  - renaming source statements 197
  - replacing library entry 188
  - replacing procedure statements 193
- OCL
  - chained procedures 77
  - compile RPG II source 65
  - copy disk 67
  - include utility control statements in procedure 76
  - initialize a disk 64
  - multifile BUILD 69
  - multifile CALL 71
  - multivolume indexed file creation 73
  - multivolume master file update 72
  - process customer program 66
- external indicators
  - at IPL 48
  - considerations when responding to SWITCH
    - in BUILD cycle 49
    - in LOAD cycle 48
  - current setting displayed in SWITCH statement 48
  - using the SWITCH statement to change 48

- file and volume label display program
  - control statements 105
  - example 111
  - OCL considerations 110
  - parameter descriptions 106
  - program name 110
  - program uses 105
- file date
  - keyword description 38
  - restriction during file creation run 38
- file dates 115
- file delete program
  - control statements 113
  - examples 117, 118
  - OCL considerations 116
  - parameter descriptions 114
  - program name 116
  - program uses 112
- file designation
  - how to change 38
  - response to RETAIN in OCL cycle 37
- file keywords
  - system-operator interaction during prompting of 35
- FILE NAME
  - for \$DSORT, \$COPY, \$MICR, \$RPG, and \$KDE 36
  - for RPG programs 36
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 19
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 12
  - its position in BUILD sequence 16
  - its position in LOAD sequence 10
  - keyword description 36
- file names, file delete 114
- file statement summary 54
- file-to-library copy function of library maintenance program 168
- files
  - direct 199
  - indexed 199
  - multivolume 51
  - records-tracks conversion for 208
  - sequential 199
- FORMS, entering keyword during MODIFY phase 44
- FROM parameter, library maintenance 165

glossary 209

HALT  
  in card OCL 30, 32  
  in conversational OCL 38  
halt, end-of-job  
  definition 209  
HIKEY (see multivolume files)  
hyphens in control statements 82

IBM-supplied RPG compile procedure (RPG)  
  as response to CALL NAME in CALL  
  sequence 26  
  in sample job #2 65  
  increasing size of 55  
IBM System/3 standard character set 198  
ID (identification) parameter 89  
INCLUDE  
  during a CALL cycle 47  
  entering during MODIFY phase 46  
  entering during the MODIFY phase 40  
  including control statements in a  
  procedure 55  
  response to MODIFY in BUILD sequence 23  
  restrictions following keyword 47  
  sample job 76  
  special considerations involving INCLUDE  
  statements 47  
INCR parameter of MODIFY statement 180  
indexed files  
  multivolume  
  file statements for 54  
  OCL considerations for 51  
  OCL sample jobs for 73, 75  
  record-tracks conversion for 199  
initial program load (IPL)  
  definition 209  
  establishing system date at 34  
initialization  
  clear 84  
  general definition 83  
  primary 84  
  secondary 84  
INQUIRY program  
  classifying programs for inquiry 121  
  planning inquiry programs 202  
  requesting inquiry 201  
INSERT statement (\$MAINT)  
  control statement 179  
  functions 178  
  parameters 181  
inserting source library entries  
(\$MAINT) 178

KEY LENGTH (see multivolume files)  
keyword  
  descriptions, OCL 33  
  flowcharts, what they are and how to use  
  them 2  
  prompting 7  
  response summary  
    BUILD sequence 17  
    CALL sequence 27  
    LOAD sequence 11  
    what they are and how to use them 2  
  sequences 2  
    for each keyword 33  
    what they are and how to use them 2

LABEL parameter  
  file and volume label display 107  
  file delete 114  
  in BUILD keyword-response summary 20  
  in LOAD keyword-response summary 13  
  keyword description 36  
  position in BUILD sequence 16  
  position in LOAD sequence 10  
  when response is required 37  
large RPG programs, compiling 55  
length on control statements 82  
LENGTH parameter 101, 129  
library  
  boundary changes 151  
  directories  
    definitions 152  
    directory printouts 170  
    object library directory size 156, 157  
    source library directory size 158, 159  
  entries  
    choosing designation 162  
    copy considerations 162  
    copy control statements 162  
    deleting entries 176  
    naming entries 167  
    organization in libraries 151  
    renaming entries 181  
    types 151  
  library entry retrieval subroutine  
  (SUBR15) 205



- library maintenance program
  - control statement summaries
    - allocate 154
    - copy 162
    - delete 176
    - modify 179
    - rename 181
  - examples
    - allocate 183
    - copy 186
    - delete 191
    - modify 193
    - rename 197
  - library description 151
  - LIBRARY parameter 165
  - library to library copy
    - considerations 168, 169
    - control statements 163
  - library to printer and card copy
    - considerations 169
    - control statements 164
  - library, object
    - changing upper boundary 151
    - definition 209
  - library, source (see source library)
  - parameter summaries
    - allocate 155
    - copy 165
    - delete 177
    - modify 180
    - rename 181
  - program name 182
  - program uses
    - allocate 152
    - copy 161
    - delete 176
    - modify 178
    - rename 181
- line counter specifications (see FORMS)
- LIST parameter of MODIFY statement 179
- listing source library statements (\$MAINT) 178
- LOAD NAME
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 17
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 11
  - keyword description 39
  - position in BUILD sequence 16
  - position in LOAD sequence 10
- LOAD sequence, when to use 6
- LOCATION
  - considerations for multivolume files 50
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 22
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 14
  - keyword description 37
  - position in BUILD sequence 16
  - position in LOAD sequence 10
- location of libraries on disk
  - placement of object library 160
  - placement of source library 158
  - source with respect to object 151
- LOG
  - CRT as log device 59
  - entering during MODIFY 59
  - entering during READY 59
  - 2222 printer as log device 58
- maintaining correct
  - date 122
  - relative record numbers 122
  - volume sequence numbers 122
- Model 6 disk organization 200
- Model 6 job cycle 4
- MODIFY (OCL)
  - changing a previous OCL statement 42
  - deleting a previous OCL statement 42
  - disk sort specifications in a procedure 23, 27
  - entering CANCEL 43
  - entering comments 43
  - entering FORMS 44, 58
  - entering INCLUDE 46
  - entering LOG 59
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 23
  - in CALL keyword-response summary 26
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 15
  - keyword description of MODIFY options 40
  - not prompted after CALL NAME 33
  - position in BUILD cycle 16
  - position in CALL cycle 27
  - position in LOAD cycle 10
  - statement numbers 9
- MODIFY statement (\$MAINT)
  - control statement summary 179
  - functions 178
  - parameters 180
- MODIFY-entering LOG 59
- multiple files 36
- multivolume files 51
  - coding for 55
  - maintain correct date and volume sequence number 122
  - OCL considerations for 52
  - sample jobs 69
- name of source program, as response to LOAD NAME 34
- NAME parameter (\$MAINT) 165
- naming library entries 167
  - characters to use 167
  - length of name 167
  - restricted names 167
- NEWNAME parameter 166
- NOEJECT
  - in card OCL 30
  - in conversational OCL 5, 47
- NOHALT
  - in card OCL 30
  - in conversational OCL 5, 47

- object library
  - changing size
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 157
    - SYSTEM parameter 156
    - WORK parameters 157
  - creating
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 156
    - SYSTEM parameter 156
    - WORK parameter 157
  - definition 151
  - deleting
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 156
  - reorganizing
    - control statement 154
    - disk considerations 156
- object library directory
  - contents 153
  - definitions 152
  - printout 170
  - size 156
- OBJECT parameter 156
- object programs, definitions of 151
- OCL considerations
  - alternate track assignment 97
  - alternate track rebuild 102
  - copy/dump program 133
  - disk initialization 90
  - file and volume label display 110
  - file delete 116
  - library maintenance 182
  - multivolume files 52
- OCL cycle 4
- OCL guide, sample form 3
- OCL, definition 4, 209
- operation control language (OCL),
  - definition of 4, 209
- operator's OCL guide, sample form 3
- organization of library entries 151
- overriding system date 35
- P (permanent) files
  - deleting a procedure from a source
    - library 33
    - restrictions 37
    - when to assign a P (permanent)
      - designation to a file 37
- P/S, definition 63
- PACK parameter
  - alternate track assignment 96
  - alternate track rebuild 101
  - considerations for multivolume files 52
  - disk initialization 89
  - file delete 114
  - in BUILD keyword-response summary 20
  - in LOAD keyword-response summary 13
  - keyword description 36
  - OCL 36
  - position in BUILD sequence 16
  - position in LOAD sequence 10
- parameter 82
- parameter descriptions
  - alternate track assignment 96
  - alternate track rebuild 101
  - copy/dump program 129
  - disk initialization 88
  - file and volume label display 106
  - file delete 114
  - library maintenance
    - allocate 156
    - copy 165
    - delete 177
    - modify 180
    - rename 181
- permanent (P) files
  - restrictions 37
  - when to assign a P (permanent)
    - designation to a file 37
- permanent library entries 151
- primary initialization 84
- primary tractor
  - in entering LOG during MODIFY phase 59
  - lines per page setting for 44, 58
  - print positions of 44, 58
- printing entire VTOC 105
- printing file information from VTOC 105
- printing files 121
- printing library directories 161
- printing library entries 161
- printing part of an indexed file 139
- procedure
  - definition of 209
  - deleting 33
  - inserting statements 178
  - listing 178
  - modifying 178
  - removing statements 178
  - replacing statements 178

procedure name  
   response to BUILD NAME in BUILD cycle 17  
   response to CALL NAME in CALL cycle 27  
   restrictions on 33  
 processing unit (CPU), definition 209  
 PROG START key  
   (see also keyword-response summary)  
   uses of 9  
   when to use it 9  
 program names  
   alternate track assignment (\$ALT) 97  
   alternate track rebuild (\$BUILD) 102  
   disk initialization (\$INIT) 90  
   file and volume label display (\$LABEL) 110  
   file delete (\$DELETE) 116  
   library maintenance (\$MAINT) 182  
 program operation 80  
   all program except library maintenance 80  
   library maintenance 81  
 prompting, how its done 4  
 punching library entries 162

question mark key, purpose 6

reader to library copy  
   considerations 168  
   control statements 162

**READY**  
   in BUILD keyword-response summary 17  
   in CALL keyword-response summary 27  
   in LOAD keyword-response summary 11  
   keyword description 39  
   position in BUILD sequence 16  
   position in CALL sequence 27  
   position in LOAD sequence 10  
   position in the Model 6 job cycle 4

READY-entering LOG 59

REBUILD 100

**RECORDS**

  considerations for multivolume files 53  
   in BUILD keyword-response summary 21  
   in LOAD keyword-response summary 13  
   keyword description 37  
   position in BUILD sequence 16  
   position in LOAD sequence 10

records-track conversion 199

relative record number 131

REMOVE statement (\$DELETE) 113

REMOVE statement (\$MAINT)  
   control statement summary 179  
   functions 178  
   parameters 180, 181

removing source library statements (\$MAINT) 178

RENAME, library maintenance  
   control statement summary 181  
   example 197  
   use 181

renaming library entries 181

REORG (reorganize) parameter 130

reorganizing a file 121

reorganizing object library  
   control statement 154  
   disk considerations 160

reorganizing source library  
   control statement 154  
   disk considerations 159

REPLACE statement (\$MAINT)  
   control statement summary 179

  functions 178  
   parameters 180

replacing library entries  
   library to library copy 161  
   NEWNAME parameter 166  
   reader to library copy 161  
   RETAIN parameter 166  
 replacing source library entries (\$MAINT) 178

requirements  
   control statements 95, 123  
   list 52

RESER parameter of MODIFY statement 180

reserializing a source library entry (\$MAINT) 178

restrictions  
   after include 47  
   allocate 153  
   control statement 153  
   delete 176  
   during file creation runs 38  
   during inquiry 57  
   library 153  
   modify 178  
   temporary files 38

RETAIN parameter  
   library maintenance program 166  
 OCL

  in BUILD keyword-response summary 22  
   in LOAD keyword-response summary 14  
   key description 37  
   position in BUILD sequence 16  
   position in LOAD sequence 10

RPG compiler (\$RPG), response to LOAD NAME  
   in OCL cycle 34

RPG file desc, spec, source of RPG filename  
   in OCL cycle 35

RPG filename, response to FILE NAME in OCL cycle 35

RPG programs  
 compiling 65  
 compiling large RPG programs 55  
 recommended method of compiling 65

RPG source programs  
 compiling 65  
 compiling large RPG source programs 55  
 recommended method of compiling 65

RUN  
 keyword description 48  
 response to MODIFY in BUILD sequence 24  
 response to MODIFY in CALL sequence 28  
 response to MODIFY in LOAD sequence 15

S (scratch) files  
 (see also examples)  
 restrictions 38  
 when to apply an S (scratch) designation to a file 38

scheduler work area 156

scratch (S) files  
 restrictions 38  
 when to apply an S (scratch) designation to a file 38

SCRATCH control statement 113

secondary initialization 84

secondary tractor (of 2222 printer)  
 entering LOG for 58  
 lines per page setting for 58

sector, definition 209

SELECT control statement 123

SELECT KEY parameters 131

SELECT PKY parameters 131

SELECT RECORD parameters 131

SEQFLD parameter of MODIFY statement 180

sequence number in MODIFY function 178

sequential files  
 deleting records from 120, 131  
 printing part of 119, 123  
 records-tracks conversion for 199

sequential multivolume files, OCL  
 considerations for 52

setting external indicators 48

single quotation mark key (see multivolume files)

SORT source statements in procedure 23, 28

SOURCE  
 in BUILD keyword-response summary 18  
 in LOAD keyword-response summary 11  
 its position in BUILD sequence 16  
 its position in LOAD sequence 10  
 keyword description 34

source library  
 adding entries 178  
 changing size  
 control statement 154  
 disk considerations 158  
 WORK parameter 157

contents 200

creating  
 control statement 154  
 disk considerations 158  
 WORK parameter 157

definition 151, 209

deleting  
 control statement 154  
 disk considerations 159

inserting entries 178

listing entries 178

putting procedures in 33

relationship to the BUILD and CALL sequences 4

removing entries 178

reorganizing  
 control statement 154  
 disk considerations 159

replacing entries 178

reserializing entries 178

source library directory  
 contents 153  
 definition 152, 209  
 printout 170, 187  
 putting procedure names in 33  
 size 156

SOURCE parameter 156

source statements  
 as input to the RPG compiler 56  
 definition 151, 209

source unit 34

special characters, their uses and location 82

standard character set 198

statement numbers  
 in modify 40  
 in OCL cycle 9

status of system printer, consideration when responding 58

SUBR15 (library entry retrieval subroutine) 205

substitute data 100

surface analysis  
 alternate track assignment 95  
 disk initialization 85

SWITCH  
 in BUILD cycle 19  
 in LOAD cycle 12  
 keyword description 48  
 position in BUILD sequence 16  
 position in LOAD sequence 10

sysgen, definition 209

system configuration ii

system date  
keyword description 34  
overriding 35  
responding in LOAD sequence 12  
responding to in BUILD sequence 19  
system directory  
definition 153  
printout 170  
system input device, use in library  
maintenance 165  
system operator interaction during keyword  
prompting 7  
SYSTEM parameter 156  
system printer  
(see also FORMS and LOGS)  
definition 209  
system program  
changing printed output for (see FORMS  
under MODIFY)  
included in object library 156  
name as response to keyword LOAD NAME in  
OCL cycle 39

T (temporary) files  
restrictions 38  
when to assign a T (temporary)  
designation to a file 37  
temporary library entries 167  
testing condition of disk tracks (see  
surface analysis)  
TO parameter for library maintenance  
allocate 156  
copy 166  
TRACK parameter (\$BUILD) 101  
TRACKS  
considerations for multivolume files 53  
definition 209  
in BUILD keyword-response summary 21  
in LOAD keyword-response summary 14  
keyword description 37  
position in BUILD sequence 16  
position in LOAD sequence 10  
tracks-records conversion 199  
TYPE parameter 88  
types of library directories 167  
types of library entries 167

UIN control statement 86  
UNASSIGN parameter 96  
unconditional assignment of alternate  
tracks 96  
UNIT parameter  
alternate track assignment 96  
alternate track rebuild 101  
disk initialization 88  
file and volume label display 106  
file delete 114  
OCL  
BUILD unit 34  
FILE unit 36  
multivolume files 52  
SOURCE unit 34  
using a work area 119  
utility control statements  
coding 82  
in procedure (see INCLUDE)

VERIFY parameter  
alternate track assignment 96  
disk initialization 88  
VOL control statement 86  
VTOC (volume table of contents)  
contents 200  
definition 105, 209  
example of printout 107  
relationship to LABEL 36  
printing entire VTOC 105  
printing file information only 105  
VTOC file name  
as response to keyword LABEL  
in OCL cycle 36  
how to distinguish files with  
same VTOC name 38

work area  
copy/dump 119  
library maintenance 157  
WORK parameter  
copy/dump 130  
library maintenance 157

1255 MCR utility (\$MICR), in response  
to LOAD NAME 39













**International Business Machines Corporation**

**General Systems Division  
4111 Northside Parkway N.W.  
P.O. Box 2150  
Atlanta, Georgia 30301  
(U.S.A. only)**

**General Business Group/International  
44 South Broadway  
White Plains, New York 10601  
U.S.A.  
(International)**

IBM S/3 Models 4 and 6 OCL and Disk Utility Programs Reference Manual (File No. S3-36) Printed in U.S.A. GC21-7516-5